

英语语法体系

李一

@EnglishBuddy

英语语法体系

202204

李一

© 作者保留所有权利



EnglishBuddy
everything about English

公众号





目录

目录	i
英语语法体系综述	1
第一章 非谓语	5
1.1 非谓语动词	5
1.2 独立主格	19
1.3 插入语	23
第二章 复杂句	26
2.1 名词性从句	27
2.2 定语从句	36
2.3 状语从句	41
第三章 复合句	62
3.1 复合句	62
3.2 并列结构	67
第四章 主语	70
4.1 名词词组	70
4.2 代词	75
4.3 主谓一致	77
第五章 谓语	81
5.1 谓语动词	81
5.2 时态	94
5.3 语态	103
5.4 语气	105
第六章 简单句	115
6.1 基本句型	115
6.2 语法成分	124
6.3 词性	131
第七章 特殊句	143
7.1 强调句	143
7.2 倒装句	145
7.3 感叹句	149
7.4 省略句	150
7.5 非规范用法	152
第八章 长难句	154



8.1 难点总结.....	154
8.2 长难句分析.....	167
附录一 名词复数表.....	174
附录二 动词变形表.....	179
附录三 介词全表.....	186
附录四 英语语法练习题.....	188
附录五 英语语法长难句 100.....	217



英语语法体系综述

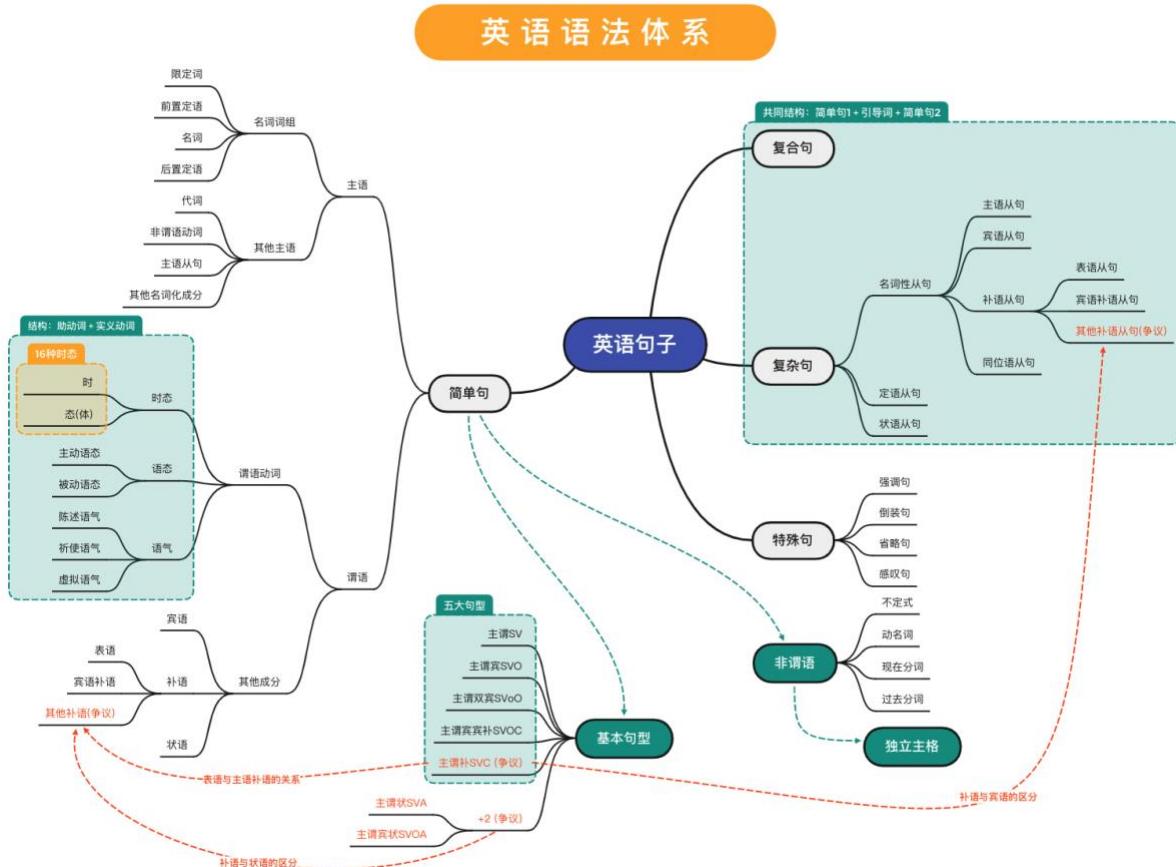
语法的重要性毋庸赘言，语法的难度也是人所共知，主要体现在语法点多，术语晦涩，难以参透，难以实用。许多语法书籍动辄几十章，大几百页，语法点上千个，学生却越学感觉越难，在阅读中看不懂长难句，在写作中常犯基本的语法错误。为何？

因为没有建立语法体系，即死记硬背零散的语法规点而缺乏系统的语法认知。须知，语法是辖词成句的一种规律。大凡规律，往往都不会太复杂，一般都能找到一个「主义」，从根本上点破各种「问题」的解决之道。这本《英语语法体系》就是希望能简约、系统地讲解语法，着重语法概念背后的深层逻辑和语法点之间的体系构建。

对于英语语法体系，这个「主义」就是其基本原则：**一个英语简单句有且仅有一个谓语动词。**这一原则可以串联几乎所有语法点：

- 1 简单句，以及对应的复杂句、复合句（[第六章](#)、[第二章](#)、[第三章](#)）
 - 2 谓语动词，包括助动词、实义动词、时态、语态、语气等概念（[第五章](#)）
 - 3 与谓语对应的主语，包括限定词、定语、名词、代词、主谓一致等概念（[第四章](#)）
 - 4 与谓语动词对应的非谓语动词，以及与非谓语动词相关的独立主格（[第一章](#)）

上述四点即本书前六章的内容，也是语法体系的核心。这些内容之间有着本质的有机联系，比如复杂句、复合句、非谓语动词本质都是为了表达复杂句意而又要避免出现多个谓语动词的方法。再结合第七章特殊句型的内容，可以画出整个英语语法体系的思维导图：





想学好语法，还要理解如下几点：

① 规范与描述。传统语法重视对语言使用的规范 (prescription)，现代语言学强调对客观语言现象的描述 (description)。过于强调规范会使语法脱离语言实际，造成「句尾不能用介词」这样从拉丁文生搬硬套到英语中的僵尸规则。但是反过来，也不可因为现代语言学提倡描述性，就完全推翻语法的规范性。部分学生及语法书迷信母语者 (native speaker)，认为只要是母语者使用过的用法都可以接受，这是走入了描述性的极端——须知母语者也有文盲，也会犯语法错误。

② 语料与规律。语法并不是天然存在的语言法则，而是在客观语料基础上人为总结出来的语言规律。语言固然是约定俗成的，但是这种约定俗成背后也有着深层规律，学习语法要多思考零散语法点背后的深层规律，避免止步于「约定俗成」「语法书就是这么写的」之类的粗浅理解。

③ 规律与例外。既然语法是人为总结出来的规律，就不可避免地存在规律无法解释的例外，所以语法书中总是充满了「一般」「往往」之类的表述。而且必然存在不同的语法体系，不同体系对于某些语法点存在争议。与一般科学理论一样，评判语法体系优劣的标准是充分 (adequacy)、自洽 (consistency) 和简洁 (simplicity)，一个好的语法体系应该尽量规律性地概括语言现象，尽量减少无法解释的例外，而且其规律性应该尽量简洁明了——从这一角度来说，那种将动词分为几十类的语法体系殊无意义。

④ 语法与语义。语法与语义不可剥离，不存在脱离语义、语境而独立存在的语法，比如单纯根据引导词无法完全判定状语从句的类型，as 引导的状语从句可能表原因、时间、比较、让步等，所以语法分析往往需要将语法形式和语义互相参照才能最终确定句子的结构。反过来，语法和语义也不可混淆，比如 I give you an apple 和 I give an apple to you 语义相同而语法结构不同，所以不可完全依赖语义类比分析句子结构。

⑤ 性质与功能。有一种几乎可以穷尽语法的方法，即遍历性质与功能，比如非谓语动词及更细致划分的不定式、动名词、现在分词、过去分词就是对某一类词/结构的定性，做主语、宾语、补语、同位语、定语、状语等语法成分就是这些非谓语动词所能胜任的语法功能。在语法学习中，不妨诘问这样的问题：名词能做哪些语法成分？能做状语的词/结构有哪些？本书以上标的形式标注性质与功能，比如 「To err」 不定式-主语 is 系动词-谓语动词 human 形容词-表语。也用图表的形式直观地展现性质与功能，即将性质与功能分别列于表格的横轴与纵轴，比如非谓语动词的功能图如下（ 1.1 非谓语动词）：

	不定式	动名词	现在分词	过去分词
主语	✓	✓	✗	✗
宾语	✓	✓	✗	✗
补语	✓	✓	✓	✓
定语	✓	✓	✓	✓
状语	✓	✗	✓	✓
同位语	✓	✓	✗	✗

⑥ 层次性。语法具有层次性，比如常说的语法成分可以是句子层次的句子成分，也可以是更低层次的修饰成分。比如 I like red apples. 并非「主谓定宾」句型（不存在这种基本句型），因



为 red 是名词词组内部的修饰成分而非句子层次的成分。再比如 that 可以引导一个简单句去做另外一个简单句的宾语，这就是把被引导的简单句降低了一个层次。

7 相对性。语法性质往往是相对而言的，同一个词、词组、结构有时分内部和外部不同的性质，比如 I like reading books. 其中 reading 在 reading books 词组内部相对于宾语 books 而言是动词，而整个 reading books 词组相对于外部的 like 而言则是动名词做宾语。

本书有几点使用说明：

1 面向读者。本书面向零基础以上的英语学习者，上至英语专业本科生，实际上的典型读者是具备一定英语基础且对英语语法有一些模糊认知的英语学习者，所以本书着重英语语法体系的构建，名词复数变形、动词变形等入门级内容只收入附录备查。本书不面向英语语言学硕士研究生以上的语言研究人员，所以现代语法学中争议的内容如无必要尽量不涉及。

2 学习原则。提倡用框架式阅读、查阅的方法使用本书，而非从头到尾通读。为了照顾不同水平的读者，本书在同一个语法下收录了各种不同难度的例句，读者只需对语法体系进行框架式阅读（已经熟练掌握或过难的内容还可以省略不看），查阅有疑问之处，并根据自身水平看相应例句即可，并不需要看所有例句。如果按照这种方法阅读，每个语法下只看一个例句，则本书核心内容实际不到 100 页，属于市面上最简约的语法书。

3 章节顺序。传统语法书一般从语法层次讲起，先罗列词性、语法成分，再讲基本句型，最后才讲到非谓语动词、复杂句、复合句，这样编排不易体现语法的规律性——实际上，词性、语法成分内容庞杂，多有争议，容易让学生从一开始学习语法就晕头转向，产生畏难情绪。本书反其道而行之，开篇前三章讲非谓语、复杂句和复合句，这三者是长难句最常见的构成方式。第四章讲主语，通过名词词组的构成把限定词、定语、名词都讲清楚，并将常做主语的代词以及与主语人称、数相关的主谓一致归于此章。第五章讲谓语，将谓语动词包含的助动词和实义动词，以及时态、语态、语气全部整理清楚。第六章先讲基本句型，这样编排把大部分语法成分和词性都融入到了相关的语法点当中，最后讲语法成分和词性时只需综述总结、查缺补漏。前六章涵盖的都是常见的「正常句型」，第七章在此基础上讲特殊句型，第八章关注长难句，先总结各种语法难点，再结合「[附录五 英语语法长难句 100](#)」的实例讲长难句分析的方法。另外，各章的真题练习题及参考答案、解析和译文见「[附录四 英语语法练习题](#)」。

4 语料来源。市面上的语法书往往由作者编写例句，使得语法书脱离学生学英语的实际。为方便读者选择符合自身水平的例句，本书例句和练习题大部分来自高考、四六级、考研英语、专四专八、雅思、托福、SAT、GRE、GMAT、LSAT 等英语考试真题，不易在真题中找到例句的则来自牛津、剑桥、韦氏、柯林斯等权威词典和 *The Economist*、*The New York Times* 等外刊，均在例句或题目后标记出处，并以加粗、下划线、上标等符号标记要说明的语法点。读者在使用这些例句时，可重点看与语法点相关的部分，略读其他部分。

5 难度分级。本书对各章节内容进行了难度分级，部分章节标记了难度符号☆☆或☆☆☆（默认☆不标记），读者可根据自身水平和需要选择。例句则主要以出处区分难度，但是例句出处与难度并不绝对重合，因为总体难度较高的英语考试中也有大量简单例句，而总体难度较低的英语考试中也有少量难度较高的例句。



6 完全列表。作为一本完备的语法工具书，本书对封闭词类实行完全列举原则，以方便读者查阅，代词、助动词、冠词、连词等分布于对应章节，介词由于内容较多单列于「[附录三 介词全表](#)」。

7 标记说明。对于争议和相对次要的内容，采用脚注的方式进行解释说明。 表示交叉引用，可点击该标志后的链接进入交叉引用的具体章节。 表示正确或存在。 表示错误或不存在。 表示存疑。 表示争议。 表示理论上存在，但是实际上一般不用，故无此例句。 表示该例句为作者编写，或源自网络但是经过作者修改或确认。

本书部分内容对章振邦的《新编英语语法教程（第六版）》和 Randolph Quirk 的 *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language.* 有所借鉴，在此一并致谢。

本书如有错漏，请读者批评指正。如有其他问题，也欢迎讨论。

@李一

2022年4月4日

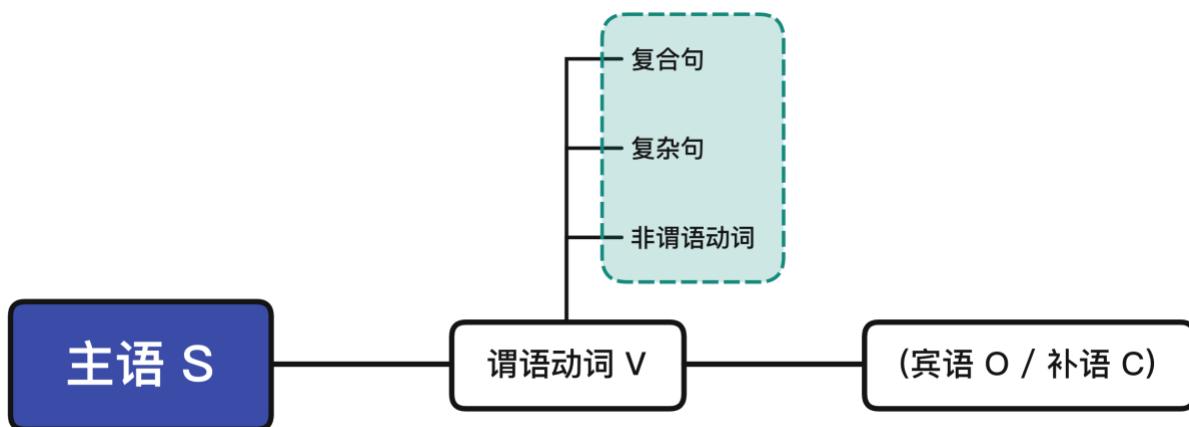


第一章 非谓语

英语语法有个「一山不容二虎」的基本原则，即：一个英语简单句有且仅有一个谓语动词。如果需要表达的句意比较复杂，涉及多个动词，则有三种方法对谓语动词之外的其他动词进行降级：

- ① 复杂句，包括名词性从句、定语从句、状语从句（[第二章 复杂句](#)）
- ② 复合句，最简单的是用 and/but/or 连接两个简单句（[第三章 复合句](#)）
- ③ 非谓语动词，包括 to do、doing、done 等

复杂句和复合句本质上都是把其他动词用在另外一个句子中，然后把这个句子附着在主句上。非谓语动词则是改变动词的形式，使其可以和谓语动词共存于一个简单句之内。英语句子因此形成一种树状结构：



注意：此为大致示意图，复合句、复杂句、非谓语动词并非一定附着在谓语动词上

1.1 非谓语动词

非谓语动词也称非限定动词 (non-finite verb)，与谓语动词 (predicate verb) / 限定动词 (finite verb) 相对应。此处的「限定」指的是动词受到主语的人称和数的限制——即需遵循「主谓一致」。另外，限定动词可以通过时态体现动作发生的时间。

I live in Shanghai.

Scott lives in Moscow.

His parents live in Seattle.

His parents lived in Oregon.

同一个动词 live，由于主语 I、Scott、his parents 不同，就要用不同的形式，也就是说动词受到了主语的「限定」。同时，根据时间不同，live 也可以用不同的时态。限定动词做谓语，所以也称谓语动词。与之相对，非限定动词则不会受到主语的人称和数的影响，也不能体现动作发生的时间。

I want to travel the world.

Everyone wants to travel the world.

We all want to travel the world.

They too wanted to travel the world.



不论主语是 I、everyone 还是 we，主语的人称和数都不会限定 to travel 的形式，所以说 to travel 是非限定动词。同时，to travel 本身也无法体现动作发生的时间。由于非限定动词不可做谓语动词，所以也称为非谓语动词。

就形式而言，非谓语动词有三种基本形式，以及多种扩展形式。非谓语动词形式与谓语动词形式相对应，可以相互转换 ($V \leftrightarrow V^{\text{非}}$)。多数情况下，非谓语动词来源于谓语动词去掉 be 动词，可以用公式表示： $V = \text{be} + V^{\text{非}}$ 。

基本形式	中文名称	英文名称	含义	来源
to do	不定式	infinitive	将来性/目的性	be to do
			完整动作	
doing	动名词	gerund	概念化/名词化的动作	be doing
	现在分词	present participle	进行中未完成的动作	
done	过去分词	past participle	被动	be done
			完成	have done

就功能而言，非谓语动词顾名思义不能做谓语动词，但是可以做其他所有语法成分（主语、宾语、补语、定语、状语、同位语）。其中，不定式可以做谓语动词之外的所有成分；动名词即由动词变化而来的名词，可以做主语、宾语、补语、同位语、定语等名词常做的成分，不能做状语；在英语中，分词即分担形容词作用的词（participle 源自拉丁文 participium，意为「分享」），可以做定语、状语、补语等形容词常做的成分，不可做主语、宾语、同位语等名词性成分。

	不定式	动名词	现在分词	过去分词
主语	✓	✓	✗	✗
宾语	✓	✓	✗	✗
补语	✓	✓	✓	✓
定语	✓	✓	✓	✓
状语	✓	✗	✓	✓
同位语	✓	✓	✗	✗
ing分词				

由于动名词和现在分词的形式相同，所以有语法学家提倡使用「ing 分词」的概念统称二者。本书为了读者能够深刻理解各种非谓语动词的性质，仍然区分提供细致的区分，但是从实用语法分析的角度，使用「ing 分词」的概念也未尝不可。

1.1.1 做状语

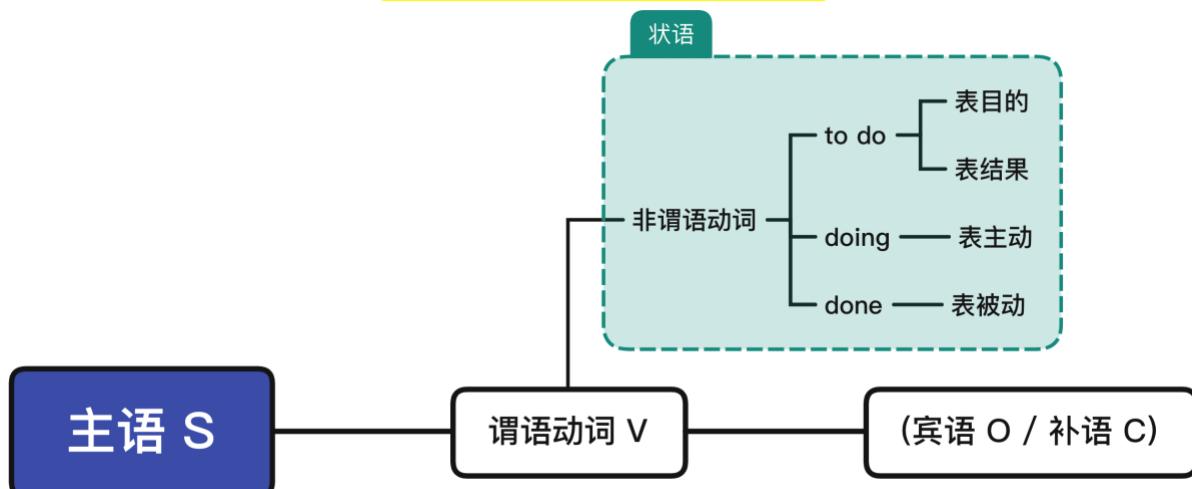
非谓语动词做状语，可以视为主语相同的两个句子合并，将其中一个谓语动词变为非谓语动词的形式，并省略相同的主语。可以用公式表示：

$$S V_1 + S V_2 = S V_1, V_2^{\text{非}}$$



多数情况下， $V = \text{be} + V^{\text{非}}$ ，所以该公式也可以写为：

$$\text{S V} + \text{S be X} = \text{S V, X}$$



除动名词不能做状语外，不定式、现在分词和过去分词可以做状语。其中，不定式 to do 做状语一般是目的状语或结果状语（源自句型 S be to do sth.）；现在分词 doing 做状语，与句子主语是主动的关系（源自进行时态 S be doing）；过去分词 done 做状语，与句子主语是被动的关系（源自被动语态 S be done）。

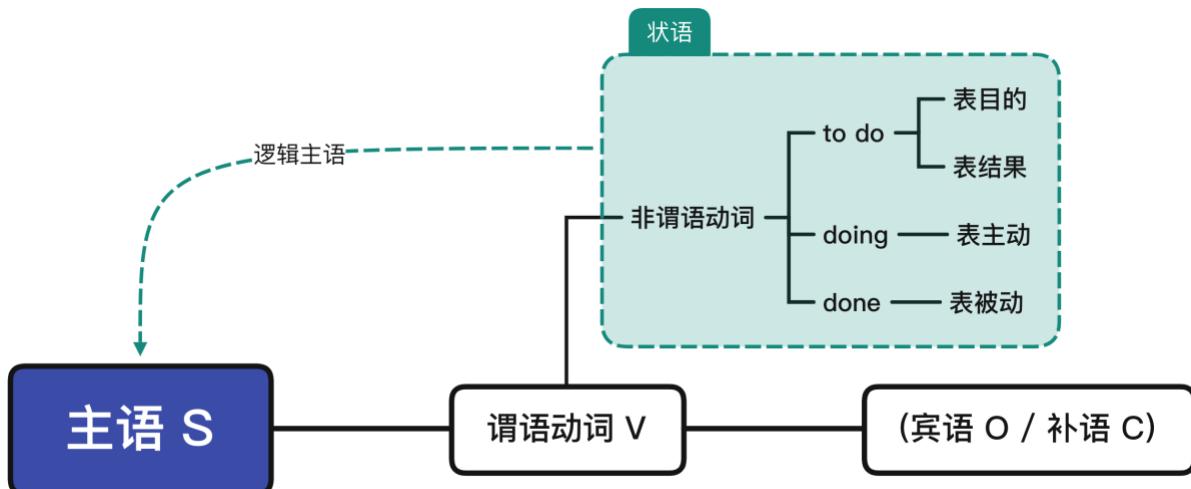
非谓语动词	功能	例句
不定式 to do	表目的	<p>Ma Shwe turned quickly to reach it and pressed the calf with her head and trunk against the rocky bank. (2009 年高考)</p> <p>For the price of 25 cents (or 5 cents per machine), customers moved from machine to machine to watch five different films (or, in the case of famous prizefights, successive rounds of a single fight). (托福 TPO2)</p> <p>Everything changed in 1833 when the first mass-audience newspaper, <i>The New York Sun</i>, pioneered the use of advertising to reduce the cost of news, thus giving advertisers access to a wider audience. (2013 年专八)</p>
	表结果	<p>He woke up only to find everyone had left. (Oxford)</p> <p>They were concerned that many would be "drawn to these new, refreshing" conceptions of teaching only to find that the void between the abstractions and the realities of teacher reflection is too great to bridge. (托福 TPO9)</p> <p>The first theory attributes a relatively constant population to periodic climatic catastrophes that decimate populations with such frequency as to prevent them from exceeding some particular limit. (GMAT)</p>



现在分词 doing	表主动	I left for the land of warmth and vitamin C, thinking of beaches and orange trees. (2015 年高考) Feeling the need to change, Leah started playing with future possibilities by exploring her interests and developing new capabilities. (2017 年 6 月四级三卷) They concentrated all nutmeg production into a few easily guarded areas, uprooting and destroying any trees outside the plantation zones. (剑桥雅思 15)
过去分词 done	表被动	Published in 1964, it's his classic memoir of 1920s Paris. (2020 年高考) Enraged by Entergy's behavior, the Vermont Senate voted 26 to 4 last year against allowing an extension. (2012 年考研) However, the density, taken with the X-ray evidence, suggest that there were two. (SAT)

逻辑主语一致

非谓语动词做状语往往涉及「逻辑主语一致原则」。逻辑主语，指的是未具体写明或不处于主语位置的实质主语。非谓语动词与其逻辑主语之间，不像主句中的谓语那样与主语有着明确、清晰的「主谓一致」关系。非谓语动词的逻辑主语往往与主句的主语一致，这一现象称为「逻辑主语一致」。



① 逻辑主语一致

He did it to impress his friends. (Oxford)

Blindfolded, the snake cannot be guided by vision.^① (托福 TPO65)

Infants are listening to adult speech as early as 10 weeks before being born, **gathering** the basic building blocks of their family's native tongue. (剑桥雅思 13)

^① 被动语态将动作对象作为语法形式上的主语，所以此处说过去分词的逻辑主语是句子的主语仍然成立。



但是，并非所有使用非谓语动词做状语的句子都符合这一原则，比如下面三种情况：

② 整句做逻辑主语

这种情况，可以将非谓语动词部分视为修饰整个句子的定语从句 (... which...) 的改写。

Among large traditional retailers, Walmart recently reported the best results, **leading** its stock price to surge, while Macy's, Target, and Nordstrom's dropped. (2019年6月六级一卷)

The best lawyers made skyscrapers-full of money, **tempting** ever more students to pile into law schools. (2014年考研)

Mills also employed steam to heat log ponds, **preventing** them from freezing and making possible year-round lumber production. (托福TPO54)

③ 争议

违反逻辑主语一致原则的非谓语动词用法，一般认为是错误的。但是有些「错句」根据上下文也能理解句意，在实际语言使用中也很常见，所以部分语法书「将错就错」地认为可以接受。本书建议尽量避免使用逻辑主语不一致的用法。

- ❓ To determine the number of cells, a sample is put under a microscope. 🌐
- ❓ Walking or sleeping, the subject was always on his mind. 🌐
- ❓ Searching along the desk, it had taken him some time to find a doctor. 🌐
- ❓ Using the electric energy, it is necessary to change its form. 🌐
- ❓ Leaving the cinema, it seemed to him that the film had been exceptionally bad. 🌐
- ❓ Having been deserted by his guide, there seemed little hope that the explorer would find his way through the jungle. 🌐

④ 例外

逻辑主语一致原则也有例外。非谓语动词做评注性状语时，逻辑主语是说话者「我」或者一种笼统的情况，与句子的主语可能并不一致，但是一般仍然认为这种用法是正确的。

To sum up, there are three main ways of tackling the problem. (Oxford)

To be fair, they were acting in good faith. (Oxford)

Judging from the width and depth of the channels, the flow rates must have been truly enormous — perhaps as much as a hundred times greater than the 105 tons per second carried by the great Amazon River. (托福TPO8)

In North America, generally speaking, money is an acceptable holiday gift to one's letter carrier or garbage collector, but is often considered an insult if given to one's employer, friends, or relatives. (GRE)

Considering^① the circumstances, Simon was remarkably cheerful. (Oxford)

^① 因为常接名词或从句组成介宾短语做状语或状语从句，considering、provided、given等可视为介词或连词，但其词源仍是非谓语动词。



Considering that he was the youngest on the field, he played well. (Oxford)
A picnic will be very pleasant, **provided** (that) we get good weather. (Oxford)
An examination of the theory's underpinnings may be critical at this point, especially **given** that native Americans themselves chafe most against the Pan-Indian classification. (LSAT)

1.1.2 做定语

笼统而言，非谓语动词可以做名词的前置定语或后置定语。具体而言，不定式只能做后置定语，动名词只能做前置定语，分词两者皆可。

	不定式	动名词	现在分词	过去分词
前置定语	✗	✓	✓	✓
后置定语	✓	✗	✓	✓

动名词做定语，相当于名词做定语。不定式、分词做定语，被修饰的名词一般是非谓语动词的逻辑主语。往往可以改写为定语从句，用公式表示为（在 V = be + V 非 成立的多数情况下）：

V 非 + N = N + V 非 = N 先行词 + that V = N 先行词 + that be V 非

1) 不定式做后置定语

不定式 to do 只能做后置定语，分为三种情况：

1 符合非谓语动词做定语公式，即 **N + to do = N 先行词 + that be to do**，此时 N 是 to do 的逻辑主语。

someone to do this = someone (who is) to do this

Even before the invention of the electric light bulb, the author produced a remarkable work of speculative fiction that would foreshadow many ethical questions to be raised by technologies yet to come. (2019 年考研)

Scientific evidence to illuminate these ideas has been slow in coming, and many shadows remain. (托福 TPO46)

Pupils should not worry about their exam results because no one will remember them in years to come, the head of a leading girls' school has said. (2018 年专八)

2 发生主被动转换，即 **N + to do = N 先行词 + (that be) to be done**，此时 N 是 to do 的逻辑宾语——如果不定式是 to be，则 N 是 to be 的逻辑表语。

something to eat = something (that is) to be eaten

Whenever I went out with him on weekends, I used to struggle to think up things to say, feeling on guard. (2008 年高考)



Nevertheless, for archaeologists concerned with the long periods of time of the Paleolithic period there are variations in coastlines of much greater magnitude to consider. (托福 TPO49)

She will ignore us when there are more interesting things to look at, rebuke us when we are careless, bark into the twilight when she has urgent messages to send. (2015 年专八)

③ 被修饰名词与不定式之间既非主谓关系也非动宾关系，而是其他语义关系。

a reason to do this, 表示「做这件事的理由」，其中 reason 和 to do this 既不是主谓关系，也不是动宾关系，只有语义上的关系^①

However, one thing is certain: change is coming, and the need to be flexible in response to this will be vital for those involved in manufacturing the vehicles that will deliver future mobility. (剑桥雅思 15)

Data from the last thirty years leads to a conclusion that is not scientifically challengeable: thinking well requires knowing facts, and that's true not only because you need something to think about. (2014 年 6 月四级二卷)

Language differences provide both a way to rationalize subordination and a ready means for achieving it. (LSAT)

2) 动名词做前置定语

动名词 doing 做定语，相当于名词做定语。

a swimming pool = a pool for swimming

building blocks = blocks for building

the purchasing manager = the manager whose job is purchasing

want to practice their fishing skills (2008 年高考)

In such a case, the company's response may not be sufficiently quick or thoughtful, and the learning curve has been steep. (2011 年考研)

The nonstarters were considered the ones who wanted stability, a strong referee to give them some position in the race, a regulative hand to calm manic speculation; an authority that can call things to a halt, begin things again from compensatorily staggered "starting lines." (GMAT)

3) 分词做前/后置定语

现在分词 ing 和过去分词 done 既可以做前置定语，又可以做后置定语。部分分词常做前置定语，很多词典已收录为形容词，但是其词源仍然是非谓语动词。

^① 置于具体的句子中，to do this 可以分析为其他语法成分，比如 I need a reason [**to do this**]目的状语。 但是在其他句子中则必须将 to do this 分析为 reason 的后置定语，比如 What I need is a reason (to do this)后置定语。
 而且从「做这件事的理由」的语义来看，将 to do this 视为 reason 的后置定语很合理。



① 现在分词做前/后置定语^①

a **moving car** = a car (**that is**) **moving**

a car **moving on the road** = a car (**that is**) **moving on the road**

Another issue affecting real estate in the **coming** year will be America's **failing infrastructure**. (2017年6月四级三卷)

The family's **increasing poverty** forced Dickens out of school at age 12 to work in Warren's Blacking Warehouse. (2017年考研)

So, while I ducked at intervals to put on the brake, amid the rich smell of **burning rubber**, our noble lorry jerked its way towards the mountains at a steady twenty miles per hour. (2015年专八)

② 过去分词做前/后置定语^②

a **well finished task** = a task (**that was**) **well finished**

a task **finished yesterday** = a task (**that was**) **finished yesterday**

Of course, the **closed stores**, **depressed executives**, and sinking stocks suggest otherwise. (2019年6月六级一卷)

The contract with Alcoa would infuse the region with foreign capital, an **estimated 400 jobs**, and spin-off service industries. (2010年专八)

For example, he argued that the introduction of **domesticated vines and olives** allowed a substantial expansion of land under cultivation and helped to power the emergence of complex society. (托福TPO41)

1.1.3 做名词性成分

非谓语动词还可以做名词性成分，即主语、宾语、补语（表语、宾补）、同位语等。

1) 做主语

非谓语动词	例句
不定式 to do	To say I had lost the thread is putting it mildly. (2017年12月四级一卷) To filter out what is unique from what is shared might enable us to understand how complex cultural behavior arose and what guides it in evolutionary or cognitive terms. (2012年考研)

^① 做前置定语的现在分词 doing 一般是不及物动词，但是有时及物动词 doing 也能做前置定语，改成后置定语或定语从句时要根据语义加上宾语，这样的 doing 多已被词典收录为形容词。比如 **loving parents** = parents (**that are**) loving {their children} 宾语不可省略 、an **exciting breakthrough** = a breakthrough (**that is**) exciting **people** 宾语不可省略 、an **interesting debate** = a debate (**that is**) interesting {the audience} 宾语不可省略 .

^② 过去分词 done 做定语一般表示被动（源于被动语态 be done），但是少数情况下也可表示完成（源于完成时态 have done）。比如 **fallen leaves** = leaves (**that have**) fallen 、a **retired teacher** = a teacher (**who has**) retired 、a **withered flower** = a flower (**that has**) withered .



	To acquire such land often required moving herds considerable distances, even from summer to winter pastures. (托福 TPO52)
动名词 doing	Unfortunately, computing was not part of our studies at school. (2009 年高考) Creating the sub-brand allowed Coach to avert an across-the-board price cut. (剑桥雅思 13) Music doesn't make you better at math, conjugating Latin doesn't make you more logical, brain-training games don't make you smarter. (SAT)

2) 做宾语

非谓语动词	例句
不定式 to do	He wants these kids to <u>learn to boast</u> about themselves. (2019 年高考) Originally from South America, the snails were accidentally introduced into the Ebro Delta by Global Aquatic Technologies, a company that raised the snails for fresh-water aquariums, but <u>failed to prevent</u> their escape. (2017 年 12 月六级一卷) Birds also have short, stubby tail skeletons, but they <u>manage to walk</u> quite well on their hindlegs. (托福 TPO64)
特殊疑问词 + to do ^①	With its focus divided, the lion becomes confused and is unsure <u>about what to do</u> next. (2014 年高考) <u>Knowing what to do</u> is not the same as being able to do it. (2013 年专四) Although there appears to be widespread agreement that such a determination would be significant, there has been little agreement <u>on how to make</u> operational the concept of carrying capacity, defined as the amount of grazing stock that the pasture can support without deterioration of either the pasture or the stock. (GMAT)
动名词 doing	This is largely due to a lower risk <u>of dying</u> of cardiomyopathic disease among taller people. (2019 年 6 月四级二卷) In addition, new digital technologies <u>have allowed</u> more rapid trading of equities, quicker use of information, and thus shorter attention spans in financial markets. (2019 年考研) Federal efforts to aid minority businesses began in the 1960's when the Small Business Administration (SBA) <u>began making</u> federally guaranteed loans and government-sponsored management and technical assistance available to minority business enterprises. (GMAT)

^① {特殊疑问词 + to do}做名词性成分，可以直接视为是一种自足的结构，也可以视为是名词性从句省略了「S be」（[2.1.3-1 名词性从句中的省略](#)）。



3) 做补语

1 做表语

非谓语动词	例句
不定式 to do	All I have to do is to go to my CD shelf, or boot up my computer and download still more recorded music from iTunes. (2011 年考研) A third reason why immigrants have traditionally come to the United States is to have a better life. (2018 年专四) A judge thus faces an indeterminate legal situation in which he or she has to choose which rules are to govern the case at hand. (LSAT)
动名词 doing ^①	Seeing is believing . (Oxford) This could be the beginning of a lifetime of mountain climbing adventure. (2008 年高考) A classic example is noisy begging by nestling songbirds when a parent returns to the nest with food. (托福 TPO11)
现在分词 doing ^②	When it gets a little boring , I might pull it out. (2013 年 6 月六级一卷) It is interesting to note that some studies show Caucasian American children have earlier childhood memories than Korean children do. (托福 TPO21) The attrition among undergraduates is particularly surprising because college standards have apparently fallen. (2016 年专八)
过去分词 done	The emerging consensus around the bill is a sign that legislators are getting frightened about a politically embarrassing short-term collapse at the USPS. (2018 年考研) Biologists have long been worried about the possible effect of the extinction of species on whole ecosystems. (托福 TPO46) If you live in a society where most people are literate then you will feel ashamed or embarrassed and avoid situations in which you have to read or write. (2017 年专四)

2 做宾语补语

非谓语动词	例句
-------	----

^① 在 S be X 句型中，与动词相关的 X 可能是不定式 to do、动名词 doing、现在分词 doing、过去分词 done、源自现在分词 doing 的形容词、源自过去分词 done 的形容词，其中只有不定式 to do、动名词 doing、源自现在分词 doing 的形容词、源自过去分词 done 的形容词是 be 的表语，此时整个句子是主系表结构；而另外两种情况分别是 be doing 整体是谓语动词的进行时态，比如 The car **is moving**. 以及 be done 整体是谓语动词的被动语态，比如 The car **was stopped** by the police. 此时整个句子不是主系表结构。

^② 做表语的现在分词 doing 和过去分词 done，往往已被词典收录为形容词，但是其词源仍是非谓语动词。



不定式 to do ^①	<p>Among her respondents, 54 percent of those who were clinically depressed said that knitting made them feel happy or very happy. (2017年12月四级二卷)</p> <p>Survival and successful reproduction usually require the activities of animals to be coordinated with predictable events around them. (托福TPO13)</p> <p>The second half of the 20th century saw a collection of geniuses, warriors, entrepreneurs and visionaries labour to create a fabulous machine that could function as a typewriter and printing press, studio and theatre, paintbrush and gallery, piano and radio, the mail as well as the mail carrier. (2012年考研)</p>
动名词 doing ^②	<p>She found her task simple cleaning. </p>
现在分词 doing ^③	<p>They then heard a woman's voice coming from the wrecked vehicle. (2016年高考)</p> <p>One sniff of it can, it is claimed, make a person more trusting 形容词/现在分词, empathetic, generous and cooperative. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>If we conservatively estimate that only about 0.2 percent is recoverable, we find a total of all the coal remaining in the United States. (GRE)</p>
过去分词 done	<p>I have seldom seen my mother so pleased 形容词/过去分词 with my progress as she is now. (2010年高考)</p> <p>An ecologist who studies a pond today may well find it relatively unchanged in a year's time. (托福TPO3)</p> <p>Because of these prejudices, women who use an intuitive approach in their criticism may find themselves charged with inability to be analytical, to be objective, or to think critically. (GRE)</p>

4) 做同位语

非谓语动词	例句
不定式 to do	<p><u>His ambition</u> to become an astronaut deserves our support. </p> <p>He made <u>his new year resolution</u> to buy a new phone for himself. </p> <p>He says that Computertown UK was formed for just <u>the opposite reason</u>, to bring computers to people and make them "people-literate". </p>

^① 不定式 to do 可能在某些结构中省略 to, 比如 see sb. do sth.、make sb. do sth. 等, 但是在被动语态中 to 不可省略, 比如 be seen **to do** sth.、be made **to do** sth. 等。

^② 动名词 doing 做宾语补语的情况极少。

^③ 做宾语补语的现在分词 doing 和过去分词 done, 可能已被词典收录为形容词, 但是其词源仍是非谓语动词。



疑问词+to do	The decision whether or not to salvage the wreck was not an easy one, although an excavation in 1978 had shown that it might be possible to raise the hull. (剑桥雅思 11)
动名词 doing	His habit, listening to the news on the radio , remains unchanged. I asked you to do <u>one simple thing</u> , looking after the baby , and now look what you've done! For years I had only <u>one true hobby</u> , fishing .

1.1.4 扩展形式 ☆☆☆

非谓语动词除了 to do、doing 和 done 三种基本形式，还有根据(时)态 (现代语法称为体 aspect) 和语态变化的扩展形式，如下表^①。从功能而言，所有扩展形式理论上都可以像基本形式一样做谓语动词之外的所有语法成分，但是在实际语言使用中，由于语义上不需要，所以部分形式并不会做某些语法成分。

态/体	语态	不定式	动名词	现在分词	过去分词
一般	主动	to do	✗	✗	✗
	被动	to be done	✗	✗	done
进行	主动	to be doing	doing	doing	✗
	被动	✗	being done	being done	✗
完成	主动	to have done	✗	having done	✗
	被动	to have been done	✗	having been done	✗
完成 进行	主动	to have been doing	✗	✗	✗
	被动	✗	✗	✗	✗

1) 不定式的扩展形式

非谓语动词	例句
to be done	Laws allowing these animals to be brought in from deep forest areas without stricter control need changing. (2009 年高考) Chris Bonington, a leading mountaineer, felt exploration was to be found in the act of physically touching the unknown. (剑桥雅思 15) It had long since outpaced Philadelphia as the largest city in the country, and even though Boston continued to be venerated as

^① 该表有几点需要注意：

- ① 如果严格区分动名词 doing 和现在分词 doing，则被动语态的动名词 being done 和现在分词的被动语态 being done 是有区别的，前者侧重名词性，后者侧重动词性。
- ② 因为过去分词 done 本身就来自被动语态，所以上表中所有被动语态的扩展形式，都可以视为是过去分词 done 的扩展形式。为简约起见，过去分词 done 一列只列基本形式 done，其他全部记为 ✗。
- ③ 上表中部分标为 ✗ 的并非理论上不可实现，而是实际语言使用中不会出现，所以一般不写出，比如不定式的进行态的被动语态形式 to be being done 理论上可以写出，但是实际上用不到。



	the cultural capital of the nation, its image had become somewhat languid; it had not kept up with the implications of the newly industrialized economy, of a diversified ethnic population, or of the rapidly rising middle class. (2019 年专八)
to be doing	<p>More and more people I know seem to be turning to yoga, or meditation, or tai chi. (2012 年 12 月六级一卷)</p> <p>Two factors appear to be generating the cycle: food plants and predators. (托福 TPO27)</p> <p>And then there is the U.S., where society seems to be cleaving into two groups: Very Important Persons, who don't wait, and Very Impatient Persons, who do — unhappily. (2010 年专八)</p>
to have done	<p>He had always had a good memory, but the thrill of young love seems to have shifted a gear in his mind: from now on, he would start recording his whole life in detail. (2017 年 6 月四级一卷)</p> <p>But some states — Kentucky, South Dakota and Alabama, to name just a few — seem to have missed the message that smoking is deadly. (2015 年专四)</p> <p>The law-and-literature movement claims to have introduced a valuable pedagogical innovation into legal study: instructing students in techniques of literary analysis for the purpose of interpreting laws and in the reciprocal use of legal analysis for the purpose of interpreting literary texts. (LSAT)</p>
to have been done	<p>The very thought of formulating immigration laws from the standpoint of what is best for the American people seems to have been forgotten by many who focus on how to solve the problems of illegal immigration. (2014 年 6 月六级三卷)</p> <p>Now, research published by Dr Yama Dixit and Professor David Hodell, both from Cambridge's Department of Earth Sciences, has provided the first definitive evidence for climate change affecting the plains of north-western India, where hundreds of Harappan sites are known to have been situated. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>Some of those slabs appear to have been painted as much as 28,000 years ago, which suggests that painting in Africa is as old as painting in Europe. (托福 TPO4)</p>
to have been doing	Within the larger framework of American colonial life, then, not the Southern but the Puritan colonies appear to have been distinctive, and even they seem to have been rapidly assimilating to the dominant cultural patterns by the late Colonial period. (GRE)



	Recently, two employees of an automotive company were discovered to have been communicating disparaging information about their supervisor via electronic mail. (LSAT)
--	---

2) 动名词的扩展形式

非谓语动词	例句
being done	<p>Being well-hydrated also improves sleep quality, cognition, and mood. (Harvard School of Public Health)</p> <p>Why do so many people respond negatively to being loved? (psychalive.org)</p> <p>Aspirin and other similar drugs (such as indomethacin and ibuprofen) keep prostaglandins from being made by interfering with an enzyme known as prostaglandin synthetase, or cyclooxygenase. (GMAT)</p>

3) 现在分词的扩展形式

非谓语动词	例句
being done	<p>The challenge the computer mounts to television thus bears little similarity to one format being replaced by another in the manner of record players being replaced by CD players. (2012 年考研)</p> <p>These are the sources of the two spices nutmeg and mace, the former being produced from the dried seed and the latter from the aril. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p>Methods widely used today include analysis of aerial images that yield a broad geological overview; geophysical techniques that provide data on the magnetic, electrical, and mineralogical properties of the rocks being investigated; and sensitive chemical tests that are able to detect the subtle chemical halos that often envelop mineralization. (GMAT)</p>
having done	<p>"There's an ancient legend that as long as these eggs are made, evil will not prevail in the world," says Joan Brander, a Canadian egg-painter who has been painting eggs for over 60 years, having learned the art from her Ukrainian relatives. (2017 年 6 月四级一卷)</p> <p>Where neighbors are in the same position, having filled up the whole of the desirable habitat available in their home territories, expansion is also problematic. (托福 TPO35)</p> <p>It had already been improved after having caused damage to the bank's reputation in the past. (GMAT)</p>

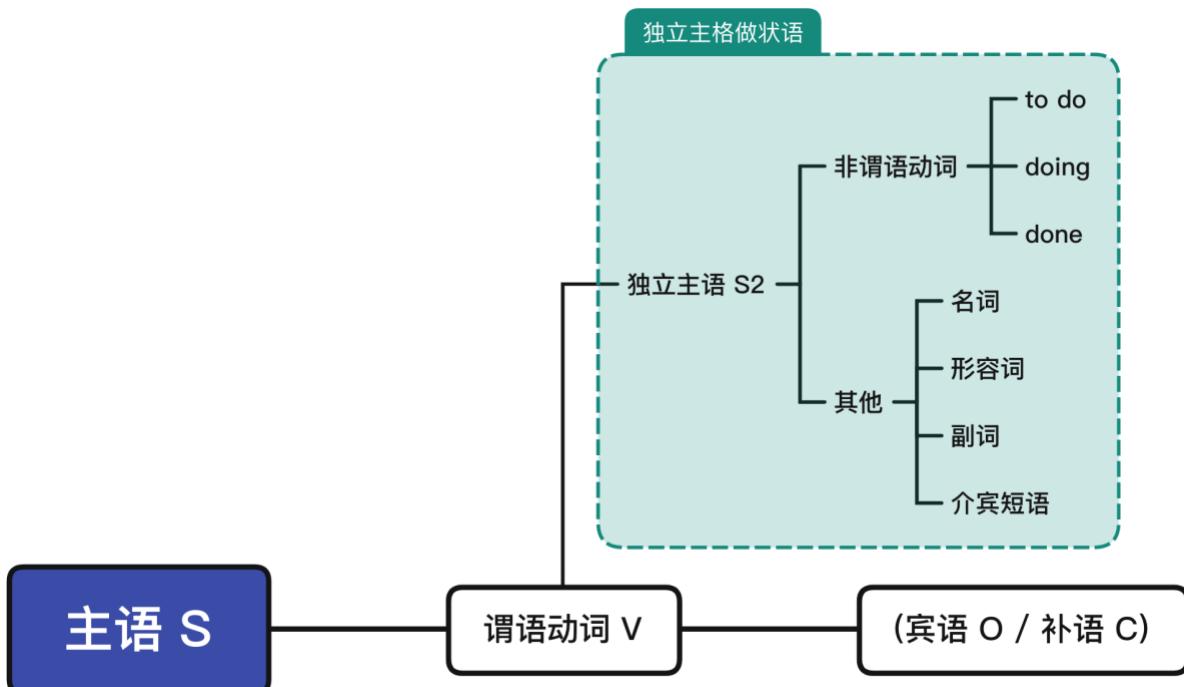


having been done	<p>With the software having been developed in the United States on the same variety of crops in seemingly similar conditions, the agronomist feels confident that the software will produce a near accurate result. (2020 年 12 月六级一卷)</p> <p>But if improving their hunting luck was the chief motivation for the paintings, it is difficult to explain why only a few show signs of having been speared. (托福 TPO4)</p> <p>Every year, Mexican Americans celebrate Cinco de Mayo as fervently as many Irish American people embrace St. Patrick's Day (both are major holidays in the countries of origin), with both holidays having been reinvented in the context of the United States and linked to ideals, symbols, and heroes of the United States. (GMAT)</p>
------------------	---

1.2 独立主格 ☆☆

独立主格 (nominative absolute) , 就是独立于主句之外的逻辑主语 + 附加成分做主句的状语, 解释说明主句的原因、方式等, 可以用公式表示为: **独立主格 = S2 + X**。附加成分可以是非谓语动词——因为「一个简单句有且仅有一个谓语动词」, 也可以是名词、形容词、副词、介宾短语等成分。由其构成反推, 在 V = be + V 非 成立的多数情况下, 可以用如下方法验证独立主格:

- ① 独立主语 S2 + be + X = 完整句子
- ② Because/When 等连词 + 独立主语 S2 + be + X = 状语从句





1) S2 + 非谓语动词

非谓语动词做独立主格中的附加成分，理论上可以用所有形式，但是实际一般只用基本形式。

附加成分 X	例句
不定式 to do to be done to be doing to have done to have been done to have been doing	We will assemble at nine, <u>the train to depart</u> at precisely ten. The two brothers went their separate ways, <u>one to become</u> a known lawyer, and <u>the other to become</u> a notorious drug dealer. <u>My friends to come</u> tonight, I will order some Chinese food. <u>The ceremony to be held</u> tomorrow, the groom is still nowhere to be found. There <u>to be no more guests coming</u> , the host declared the party open.
现在分词 doing being done having done having been done	<u>It being Sunday</u> ^① , the boys went to church with their parents. By contrast, dry soils are sandy and porous, <u>their coarse textures permitting</u> water to drain rapidly. (托福 TPO31) That being said , next time someone calls me a radical, I will accept that label with pride. (2020 年 9 月六级一卷) Eusocial insect societies have rigid caste systems, <u>each insect's role being defined</u> by its behavior, body shape, and physiology. (GMAT) <u>The rain having stopped</u> , he went out for a walk. <u>These very legitimate complaints having</u> frequently been made , it remains to find a means of testing the strength of the theories. (LSAT)
过去分词 done	<u>Her homework done</u> , the girl went out for tik-tac-toe. <u>The final exam finished</u> today, the summer vacation will officially begin next Monday. "Marquis," said the boy, turning to the man, <u>his eyes opened wide</u> and <u>his right hand raised</u> .

2) S2 + 其他附加成分

附加成分 X	例句
名词	The boy received many birthday presents, <u>some of them books</u> , <u>some of them toys</u> .

^① 独立主格中用到 be 动词的现在分词形式 being 时，一般可以省略 being 变为「S2 + 名词」型独立主格，但是逻辑主语是代词时，以及在 there being 句型中，省略 being 之后句子不成立，所以这两种情况下 being 不可省略。

It being Sunday, all the offices are closed.

There **being** no bus, we had to walk home.



	He fought the hyena alone, <u>his only weapon a bough</u> .
	<u>His son now a doctor</u> , he felt rewarded for his decades of efforts.
形容词	The girl turned around, <u>her eyes wide open with fear</u> . The dilapidated tower stood silently in the wind, <u>a shabby door half open</u> . She gave him a glare, <u>defiant words ready to burst out</u> .
副词	<u>Music on</u> , all the guests started dancing. <u>School over</u> , the boys ran out for soccer. The writer sat at the table, <u>collar off</u> , <u>head down</u> , pen in hand, ready to start his new book.
介宾短语	Miss Wordsworth entered the classroom, <u>(a) ① book in (her) hand</u> . He silently stood at the window, <u>his back towards his wife</u> . The man slowly moved forward, <u>(his) neck deep in the water</u> , trying to reach his son. When the students came in, <u>sharpened pencils in hand</u> , there was not a blue book in sight. (2017年12月四级一卷)

3) with/without 型独立主格

with/without 型独立主格，就是在上述独立主格前加上 with/without。严格来说，这是以 with/without 为中心的介宾短语结构做状语，所以如果 S2 是人称代词，要用宾格的形式。理论上，在 with/without 型独立主格中也可以用非谓语动词的所有形式，但是实际一般用基本形式。

附加成分	例句
不定式 to do	The kid screamed excitedly <u>with his beloved uncle to come</u> over Christmas.
to be done to be doing to have done	The family moved out reluctantly <u>with their old house to be demolished</u> the next day. <u>Without liquid water to remove</u> carbon from the atmosphere, the level of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere of Venus remains high.
to have been done to have been doing	(托福 TPO51)
现在分词 doing being done having done having been done	Yet Watson's reductive model is now widely applied, <u>with 'behaviour change' becoming</u> the goal of governments. (剑桥雅思 13) In 1837, however, John Deere patented a sharp-cutting steel plow that sliced through the sod <u>without soil sticking</u> to the blade. (托福 TPO33) And every year, Mexican Americans celebrate <i>Cinco de Mayo</i> as fervently as many Irish American people embrace St. Patrick's Day

① 为了语言简练，在不引起歧义的前提下，独立主格中的限定词和形容词性物主代词可以省略。



	(both are major holidays in the countries of origin), with both holidays having been reinvented in the context of the United States and linked to ideals, symbols, and heroes of the United States. (GMAT)
过去分词 done	<p>Furthermore, the future of the market looks far from rosy, with sales expected to fall further to £1.11 billion in 2016. (2017年6月四级二卷)</p> <p>With its gene pool isolated, a separate population can follow its own evolutionary course. (托福 TPO42)</p> <p>The rag opens with a bright, memorable strain or theme, followed by a similar theme, leading to a trio of marked lyrical character, with the structure concluded by a lyrical strain that parallels the rhythmic developments of the earlier themes. (GRE)</p>
名词	✗ ①
形容词	<p>The little girl raised her head with eyes full of wonder. </p> <p>All these effects held true for measures of happiness, life satisfaction and self-esteem, with the effects stronger in the 8th and 10th-graders. (2019年12月六级一卷)</p> <p>Overall, about 38 percent of the families of marine animals were lost, with percentages much higher in some groups Ammonoid mollusks went from being very diverse and abundant to being extinct. (托福 TPO33)</p>
副词	<p>The garden looks even more beautiful with the moon up. </p> <p>With her parents out, the kid had to stay at home alone. </p> <p>Without a light on, the castle looks haunted. </p>
介宾短语	<p>The London agents Stirling Ackroyd recently identified enough sites for half a million houses in the London area alone, with no intrusion on green belt. (2016年考研一)</p> <p>Its public display and private possession laid the basis for temporal autonomy: people could now coordinate comings and goings without dictation from above. (托福 TPO30)</p> <p>Lane usually depicts places like New York Harbor, with ships at anchor, but even when he depicts more remote, less commercially active harbors, nature appears pastoral and domesticated rather than primitive or unexplored. (LSAT)</p>

① with/without型独立主格中的附加成分不能是名词，因为「with/without + 逻辑主语 S2 + 名词」无法构成一个介宾短语。



1.3 插入语（广义）

严格意义上的插入语 (parenthesis/insert) 属于独立成分 ([6.2 语法成分](#))，不做类似于主语、谓语、宾语、定语、状语、补语、同位语等句内语法成分，去掉插入语句子仍然成立。但是从分析长难句的实用角度，可以将插入语的概念扩大。在分析句子结构时，可将句子核心成分（主语、谓语动词、宾语、补语）之外不好分析的外围成分先划为广义的插入语，之后再分析其具体成分。广义的插入语可能对应独立成分（比如呼唤语、感叹语 [6.2 语法成分](#)），也可能对应句子修饰性成分（比如状语、定语、同位语）。

从形式上看，插入语常用逗号、破折号、括号等与句子其他部分隔开。从位置上看，插入语可以置于句首、句中、句末。从构成上看，可做插入语的结构很多，可以笼统分为两类：动词型插入语（包括非谓语动词、独立主格）、其他插入语（包括形容词、副词、介宾短语、呼语、感叹语、分句、句子等）。

1) 动词型插入语

可能构成	例句
不定式 to do	to be frank、to be honest、to be sure、to tell you the truth、to make matters worse、to sum up、to start with、to begin with 等 To tell you the truth , I don't really know. (Oxford) To begin with , that lean Texan model has its own problems. (2014 年 6 月六级二卷) To sum up , learning is affected by emotions of both the individual and significant others. (剑桥雅思 10)
现在分词 doing	generally speaking、strictly speaking、judging from/ by、talking of、considering 等 Considering the circumstances , Simon was remarkably cheerful. (Oxford) Generally speaking , there are no unfiltered comments or casually taken photos on our social media pages. (2020 年 12 月六级三卷) Judging from our conversations with many students, Oprah was a widely popular choice. (2014 年 6 月六级一卷)
独立主格	weather/time permitting、that being said 等 Weather permitting , guests can dine outside on the veranda. (Oxford) That being said , next time someone calls me a radical, I will accept that label with pride. (2020 年 9 月六级一卷)

2) 其他插入语

可能构成	例句
------	----



形容词	<p>true、wonderful、excellent、funny、strange to say、needless to say、most important of all、sure enough 等</p> <p>Strange to say, most people have no idea who he is. (Oxford)</p> <p>Enemies of high tobacco taxes cling to the tired argument that they fall disproportionately on the poor. True, but so do the deadly effects of smoking — far worse than a tax. (2015 年专四)</p> <p>GM crops can and almost certainly will be part of that suite of tools, but so will traditional plant breeding, improved soil and crop management — and perhaps most important of all, better storage and transport infrastructure, especially in the developing world. (2015 年 6 月六级二卷)</p>
副词	<p>indeed、surely、still、otherwise、certainly、however、generally、personally、honestly、fortunately、luckily、though、besides、exactly、perhaps、maybe、probably、frankly、or rather 等</p> <p>She's rather young, perhaps, but she's very able. (Oxford)</p> <p>Making should be student-directed and student-led, otherwise it's boring. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)</p> <p>One of the reasons why the appointment came as such a surprise, however, is that Gilbert is comparatively little known. (2011 年考研一)</p>
介宾短语	<p>in fact、in one's opinion、in general、in a word、in other words、in a few words、of course、by the way、as a result、for example、on the contrary、on the other hand、in short、as a matter of fact、in conclusion、in brief、in sum、in the first place、to one's knowledge/surprise/regret/satisfaction/joy/disappointment 等</p> <p>Much to my surprise, I was given the job. (Oxford)</p> <p>On the contrary, all the facts suggest that high unemployment in America is the result of inadequate demand. (2016 年 6 月六级一卷)</p> <p>Working with teenagers, they found that those who 'approach' a boring situation — in other words, see that it's boring and get stuck in anyway — report less boredom than those who try to avoid it by using snacks, TV or social media for distraction. (剑桥雅思 13)</p>
分句、句子	<p>I am sure、I believe、I think、I know、I suppose、I hope、I'm afraid、you see、what's more、that is to say、as we know、as I see it、believe it or not 等</p> <p>Of the outstanding ladies listed below, who do you think was the most important woman of the past 100 years? (2016 年高考)</p> <p>What is more, big companies are increasingly global. (2012 年 12 月六级一卷)</p>



This is the famed citation index, **that is to say**, the number of times a paper has been quoted elsewhere in the scientific literature, the assumption being that an important paper will be cited more often than one of small account.
(2019 年考研一)

Let me share five facts that **I believe** every college student should know about stress. (2014 年专四)



第二章 复杂句

复杂句 (complex sentence) 是在不违反英语语法基本原则的前提下表达复杂句意的第二种方法，使一个简单句从属于另一个简单句，处于主导地位的简单句称为主句 (main clause)，处于从属地位的简单句称为从句 (subordinate clause)。



从词性看，引导词^①分为代词、副词、连词三种。但是副词和连词的接续方法相同，所以从用法看，引导词可分为代词、副词/连词两类。

引导词	简单句 2	说明
代词	不完整句	<p>「不完整」指缺少代词引导词在从句中所做的语法成分（主语、宾语、补语）</p> <p>① 缺 S V...</p> <p>② S Vt 缺 O</p> <p>③ S Vd o 缺 O^②</p> <p>④ S V 缺 C</p> <p>⑤ S Vt O 缺 C</p>
副词/连词	完整句子	「完整」指句子核心成分不缺失

从句相当于什么词性的作用，就称为什么词性从句；从句在主句中做什么语法成分，就称为什么语从句。

从句类别		从句作用相当的词性	从句在主句中做的成分
名词性从句	主语从句	名词	主语
	宾语从句		宾语
	补语从句		补语
	同位语从句		同位语
定语从句	定语从句	形容词	定语

^① 引导词有多种称呼，比如关系词、连接词，本书统一称为引导词，但是在定语从句中也可以依照惯例称为关系词，并分为关系代词和关系副词。

^② 代词引导词不可代替 SVoO 句型中的间接宾语 o。

✓ This is the apple **that I gave you yesterday.** 地球 其中 that 在从句中做直接宾语

✗ You are the person that I gave the apple yesterday. 地球

只能用 You are the person that I gave the apple **to** yesterday. 地球 但是此时句型已经改变，因为 I gave the apple to you 并非 SVoO 句型，而是 SVO + [to you] 状语。



状语从句	状语从句	状语	状语
------	------	----	----

2.1 名词性从句

因为主语、宾语、补语、同位语一般由名词充当，所以主语从句、宾语从句、补语从句、同位语从句相当于名词的作用，统称为名词性从句。四种名词性从句的结构相同，都分为两种：

1 连词 that/ whether/ if + 完整句子

2 特殊疑问句的陈述语序

2.1.1 连词 that/ whether/ if + 完整句子

此处的 that、whether、if 都是连词，其中 that 无实际含义，whether 和 if 表示「是否」^①，且常与 or not 连用。可以笼统说 that/ whether/ if 引导名词性从句，但是具体到特定从句却不是每个引导词都能用。

1) 主语从句

主语从句可以用 that 和 whether 引导，不可用 if 引导。

引导词	例句
that	<p><u>That</u> people often experience trouble sleeping in a different bed in <u>unfamiliar surroundings</u> is a phenomenon known as the "first-night" effect. (2017 年 12 月四级一卷)</p> <p><u>That</u> we now have an abundance of the proof that was called for was established when Barbara Bentley reviewed the relevant evidence in 1977, and since then many more observations and experiments have provided still further proof that ants benefit plants. (托福 TPO34)</p> <p>While it 形式主语 is likely <u>that</u> fewer varieties of plant seeds have reached Hawaii externally than internally, more varieties are known to be adapted to external than to internal transport. (GRE)</p>
whether	<p><u>Whether</u> food is contaminated depends much on the number of bacteria that get onto it. (2018 年 12 月四级三卷)</p> <p>However, it 形式主语 remains to be seen <u>whether</u> there are any character traits that predict the kind of boredom each of us might be prone to. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p><u>Whether</u> that's primarily of the disease for which it is raising funds or the speed at which images of swimsuit-clad celebrities will go viral is a long-term question. (2016 年专八)</p>

^① 因为 if 还有「如果」的词义，所以 if 用于引导名词性从句须以不引发歧义为前提。一般而言，if 只用于宾语从句和部分补语从句，引导主语从句、同位语从句只用 whether，不用 if。



2) 宾语从句

宾语从句可以用 that、whether 和 if 引导，且 whether 和 if 可以互换。

引导词	例句
that	<p>The friends who introduced me to camping thought <u>that</u>^① it meant to be a pioneer. (2017 年高考)</p> <p>While assessments vary widely, geologists estimate <u>that</u> Antarctica holds at least 36 billion barrels of oil and natural gas. (2016 年 12 月六级二卷)</p> <p>Cooper and her colleagues argue <u>that</u> the success of the crown for Hull, where it brought in £220m of investment and an avalanche of arts, ought not to be confined to cities. (2020 年考研)</p> <p>For until Proust was confident that he was at last in sight of a viable structure for <i>Remembrance</i>, he told few correspondents <u>that</u> he was producing anything more ambitious than <i>Contre Saint-Beuve</i>. (GRE)</p>
whether/ if	<p>Thus, the keyboard can determine people's identities, and by extension, <u>whether</u> they should be given access to the computer it's connected to—regardless of <u>whether</u> someone gets the password right. (2019 年高考)</p> <p>The participants weren't told beforehand <u>whether</u> the tunes were composed by humans or computers, but were asked to guess, and then rate how much they liked each one. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>It's interesting to wonder <u>if</u> the images we see every week of stress-free, happiness-enhancing parenthood aren't in some small, subconscious way contributing to our own dissatisfactions with the actual experience, in the same way that a small part of us hoped getting "the Rachel" might make us look just a little bit like Jennifer Aniston. (2011 年考研)</p> <p>Cross-reactions are possible and this method cannot determine <u>whether</u> the substances detected by the antiserums really are the hormones, or merely close relatives. (GRE)</p>

3) 补语从句

传统语法一般只讲表语从句，但是从句也可做宾语补语，以及其他补语。笼统来说，补语从句由 that、whether 和 if 引导，但是并非每一个引导词都可用于每一种从句。

构成	表语从句	宾语补语从句	其他补语从句
that + 完整句子	✓	✗	✓
whether + 完整句子	✓	✗	✓
if + 完整句子	✗	✗	✓

^① 宾语从句的引导词 that 可以省略。



从句	引导词	例句
表语从句	that	<p>Moran says one of the problems with jazz today is <u>that</u> the entertainment aspect of the music has been lost. (2017年高考)</p> <p>Now it seems <u>that</u> a hand gun was found in your luggage. (2011年6月六级)</p> <p>Scholars have detected some 6,000 separate hieroglyphic characters in use over the history of Egyptian writing, but it appears <u>that</u> never more than a thousand were in use during any one period. (托福TPO39)</p> <p>A second risk is <u>that</u> White-owned companies may seek to cash in on the increasing apportionments through formation of joint ventures with minority-owned concerns. (GMAT)</p>
	whether	<p>One of the main theoretical home-security concerns is <u>whether</u> or not a given system is vulnerable to being blocked from working altogether. (2016年12月四级一卷)</p> <p>Another unanswered question is <u>whether</u> herbicide-resistant genes will move into the populations of weeds. (托福TPO38)</p> <p>The regulatory issue around Uber is <u>whether</u> the rules governing rides-for-hire need to be drastically different than the rules governing driving-yourself-around. (2013年专八)</p>
其他补语从句 ①	that	<p>She was glad <u>that</u> people can have a chance to see the treasure. (2017年专四)</p> <p>I was thrilled <u>that</u> so many people turned up to the party. (Cambridge)</p> <p>But in the rare chance that there is a micro-organism that can make you sick on the exact spot where the food dropped, you can be fairly sure <u>that</u> the bug is on the food you are about to put in your mouth. (2018年12月四级三卷)</p>
	whether/ if	<p>I wasn't sure <u>whether</u> you'd like it. (Cambridge)</p> <p>I wasn't sure <u>if</u> he was really interested or <u>if</u> he was just being polite. (2011年高考)</p> <p>He was not certain <u>whether</u> his friend was there or not. (Collins)</p>

① 其他补语从句属于争议内容，此处给出的例句传统语法称为形容词宾语从句（[6.2.2 补语](#)）。按此划分，if 只可引导宾语从句，不能引导主语从句、同位语动词、补语从句。



4) 同位语从句

同位语从句即从句与主句中的某个名词组成同位语关系，一般用 fact、idea、news、information、order、belief、advice、suggestion 等抽象名词笼统概括同位语从句的内容，用同位语从句解释抽象名词的具体含义，同位语从句可以用 that 和 whether 引导，不可用 if 引导。可以用公式表示为：**抽象名词 = 同位语从句 = that/ whether + 完整句子。**

引导词	例句
that	<p>It is utterly confusing to me that people do not recognize this, despite the fact <u>that</u> pretty much anyone who has been a student can tell the difference between their best and worst teachers. (2016 年 12 月四级三卷)</p> <p>The universal appeal of these tales is frequently attributed to <u>the idea that</u> they contain cautionary messages: in the case of Little Red Riding Hood, to listen to your mother, and avoid talking to strangers. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p>Of course, it would be as dangerous to overreact to history by concluding that the majority must now be wrong about expansion as it would be to reenact the response that greeted <u>the suggestion that</u> the continents had drifted. (GRE)</p>
whether	<p>This leaves open <u>the question whether</u> he acted correctly. (Collins)</p> <p><u>The question whether</u> we should call in a specialist was answered by the family doctor. </p> <p><u>The question, whether</u> we need it, has not yet been considered. </p>

2.1.2 特殊疑问句的陈述语序

根据特殊疑问词是否做主语，特殊疑问句从结构上分为两类，分别对应两类「特殊疑问句的陈述语序」（[5.4.1 陈述语气](#)）。

疑问词	语序	例句
不做主语 结构①	特殊疑问句	<p>特殊疑问词 (不做主语) + 第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 主语 + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...?</p> <p>What <small>宾语</small> are they talking about? </p> <p>When <small>状语</small> will he arrive? </p>
	陈述语序	<p>特殊疑问词 + 主语 + 第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 主语 + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...</p> <p>When Greeks talk they begin their sentences with verbs and the form of the verb includes a lot of information so you already know <u>what</u> they are talking about after the first word and can interrupt more easily. (2018 年专八)</p> <p>I don't know <u>when</u> he will arrive. (Oxford)</p>



结构 ②	特殊疑问句	特殊疑问词(不做主语) + 系动词 be + 主语? (谓语动词为系动词 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时, 且系动词 be 前没有其他助动词) Who 表语 was Marie Curie?
	陈述语序	特殊疑问词(不做主语) + 主语 + 系动词 be You probably know who Marie Curie was, but you may not have heard of Rachel Carson. (2016 年高考)
做主语	特殊疑问句	特殊疑问词(做主语) + 第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 其他助动词 + 实义动词... What scene ^① would be prepared for us? Who should be the one to fix it? Which elements have survived longest?
	陈述语序	特殊疑问词(做主语) + 第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 其他助动词 + 实义动词... Since it was our turn next, we were left wondering what scene would be prepared for us. (2012 年高考) For example, there's a problem that needs to be addressed immediately, resulting in a dispute over who should be the one to fix it. (2017 年 12 月四级一卷) Tehrani has used the same approach to compare related versions of fairy tales to discover how they have evolved and which elements have survived longest. (剑桥雅思 15)
结构 ②	特殊疑问句	特殊疑问词(做主语) + 系动词 be + 表语? (谓语动词为系动词 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时, 且系动词 be 前没有其他助动词) Which position is open to recent school graduates? (2011 年高考)
	陈述语序	特殊疑问词(做主语) + 系动词 be + 表语? We need to know which position is open to recent school graduates.

由上表可知, 当疑问词在特殊疑问句中做主语时, 特殊疑问句本身就是「陈述语序」, 所以在名词性从句中无需变换语序。当疑问词在特殊疑问句中不做主语时, 只需将特殊疑问句中的「第一个助动词+(否定副词)」移至主语后, 即可得「陈述语序」。

^① 特殊疑问词未必是一个词, 也可以是一个词组, 比如这里的 **What scene** 整体做特殊疑问词, 再比如 **How old** are you? 中的 **How old** 整体做特殊疑问词。



特殊疑问句的陈述语序做名词性从句，引导词即特殊疑问词，具体分为疑问代词和疑问副词^①。但是并非所有疑问代词和疑问副词都用于引导名词性从句，wherever、whenever、whosever、however 只引导让步状语从句。

1) 疑问代词引导名词性从句

引导词	例句
what	<p>What I'm hoping to accomplish is that my generation and younger start to reconsider and understand that jazz is not black and white anymore. (2017 年高考)</p> <p>She simply has no idea what school to transfer to. (2018 年 6 月四级一卷)</p> <p>They are worried that it is taking something special away from what it means to be human. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>When Greeks talk they begin their sentences with verbs and the form of the verb includes a lot of information so you already know what they are talking about after the first word and can interrupt more easily. (2018 年专八)</p>
whatever	<p>Snapping a photo directs attention, which heightens the pleasure you get from whatever you're looking at, Diehl says. (2018 年 6 月六级一卷)</p> <p>If that contagious cancer had popped up previously, it would have burned out in whatever region it started. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p>Maybe she hoped this little amenity would slow the growing inclination of women to stretch each haircut to last four months while nursing our hair back to whatever natural color we long ago forgot. (2013 年专八)</p>
which	<p>When asked which authors they actually enjoy, people named J. K. Rowling, John Grisham, Sophie Kinsella (ah, the big sellers, in other words). (2013 年高考)</p> <p>By pinpointing which genetic traits made it possible for mammoths to survive the icy climate of the tundra, the project's goal is to return mammoths, or a mammothlike species, to the area. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p>By winter, many of the new restaurants have worked out their kinks and, once the hype has died down, it is possible to see which restaurants are actually good and which are merely noisy and crowded. (2013 年专八)</p>
whichever	<p>Whichever of you gets here first will get the prize. (Oxford)</p> <p>Farmers and consumers alike can choose whether or not to use whichever version prevails. (2018 年 6 月六级二卷)</p>

^① 这一类型的名词性从句仍然符合从句引导词的一般接续规则，即「疑问代词 + 不完整句」「疑问副词 + 完整句子」，但是一般无需从这一角度进行分析。



	Even though early exhibitors shaped their film programs by mixing films and other entertainments together in <u>whichever way</u> they thought would be most attractive to audiences or by accompanying them with lectures, their creative control remained limited. (托福 TPO2)
who	<p>This difference in handling conflict could be the deciding factor on <u>who gets promoted to a leadership position</u> and <u>who does not</u>. (2017 年 12 月四级一卷)</p> <p>Another discovery is that oxytocin's effects vary depending on <u>who we are interacting with</u>. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>We see ourselves as a nation of extroverts – which means that we've lost sight of <u>who we really are</u>. (2014 年专八)</p>
whoever	<p>Whoever says that is a liar. (Oxford)</p> <p>They only feel angry about their ill treatment and resent <u>whoever tries to help</u>. (2020 年 12 月六级二卷)</p> <p>Google is even reportedly working on eyeglasses that could one day recognize faces and supply details about <u>whoever you're looking at</u>. (2015 年专四)</p>
whom	<p>Because trade was not formally regulated, merchants were careful about <u>whom</u> they trusted and often conducted business with people they knew personally. (托福 TPO16)</p> <p>Depending on <u>whom</u> you believe, the average American will, over a lifetime, wait in lines for two years (says National Public Radio) or five years (according to some customer-loyalty experts). (2010 年专八)</p> <p>It 形式主语 is unclear <u>whom</u> the speaker of the sentence is addressing. (GRE)</p>
whomever	<p>The report should be submitted to <u>whomever</u> they entrust the inquiry to. (Oxford)</p> <p>He was free to marry <u>whomever</u> he chose. (Oxford)</p> <p>He agreed to serve under <u>whomever</u> the party chose. (Oxford)</p>
whose	<p>It 形式主语 doesn't matter <u>whose fault</u> it is. (Oxford)</p> <p>I can't remember <u>whose idea</u> it was for us to meet again. (Collins)</p> <p>Tell me <u>whose</u> it was. (Merriam-Webster)</p>

2) 疑问副词引导名词性从句

引导词	例句
where	If you're clear about <u>where</u> you want to go, the rest of the world will either help you get there or get out of the way. (2014 年高考)



	<p>First, her experiments showed that when we don't know the answer to a question, we now think about <u>where</u> we can find the nearest Web connection instead of the subject of the question itself. (2015 年专四)</p> <p>Bihar, a few hundred miles north of Kolkata, is <u>where</u> the vast majority of rickshaw pullers come from. (2010 年专八)</p>
when	<p>To figure out how much power these devices are using, Callie Babbitt and her colleagues at the Rochester Institute of Technology in New York tracked the environmental costs for each product throughout its life – from <u>when</u> its minerals are mined to <u>when</u> we stop using the device. (2018 年高考)</p> <p>No one knows exactly <u>when</u> the waterwheel was invented, but irrigation systems existed at least 5,000 years ago, and it seems probable that the earliest waterpower device was the noria, a waterwheel that raised water for irrigation in attached jars. (托福 TPO29)</p> <p>How does the brain know <u>when</u> carbohydrates have been or should be consumed? (LSAT)</p>
why	<p>Put into words <u>why</u> you feel unworthy, <u>why</u> you don't feel good enough. (2020 年高考)</p> <p>Eastwood's team is now trying to explore <u>why</u> the attention system fails. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>If you want to know <u>why</u> Denmark is the world's leader in wind power, start with a three-hour car trip from the capital Copenhagen – mind the bicyclists – to the small town of Lem on the far west coast of Jutland. (2013 年专八)</p>
how	<p>To figure out <u>how much power</u> these devices are using, Callie Babbitt and her colleagues at the Rochester Institute of Technology in New York tracked the environmental costs for each product throughout its life – from when its minerals are mined to when we stop using the device. (2018 年高考)</p> <p>We all know <u>how</u> it feels – it's impossible to keep your mind on anything, time stretches out, and all the things you could do seem equally unlikely to make you feel better. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>One day a city official handed me a report from the municipal government laying out options for <u>how</u> rickshaw pullers might be rehabilitated. (2010 年专八)</p>



2.1.3 名词性从句注意事项

1) 名词性从句中的省略

引导词 whether/ if 表示「是否」，不可省略。引导词 that 无具体含义，部分情况下可省略。

① 宾语从句的引导词 that 往往可以省略^①。

Teach your teenager (**that**) the family phone is for the whole family. (2009 年高考)

Many ecologists now think (**that**) the relative long-term stability of climax communities comes not from diversity but from the "patchiness" of the environment, an environment that varies from place to place supports more kinds of organisms than an environment that is uniform. (托福 TPO3)

As I think about people who inadvertently invested in lives of hollow unhappiness, I can't help believing (**that**) their troubles relate right back to a short-term perspective. (2014 年专八)

② 非正式文体中，名词性从句的引导词 that 如果省略，句意仍然清晰，则可以省略 that。

It's great (**that**) you've come in time.

I'm sure (**that**) you are right.

I, for one, am glad (**that**) the universe has no meaning, for thereby is man all the more glorious. (Cambridge)

③ 特殊疑问句的陈述语序做名词性从句，如果内部结构符合「特殊疑问词 + S be to do」且 S 与主句主语相同，往往可省略「S be」部分，变为「特殊疑问词 + 不定式」的形式做名词性成分。

With its focus divided, the lion becomes confused and is unsure about **what** ()省略 it is to do next. (2014 年高考)

We've weighed so many decisions so carefully in raising our daughters — **what school** ()省略 we are **to send** them to and what church to attend, **when** ()省略 we are **to give** them cell phones and with what precautions. (2015 年专八)

有时 S 与主句主语并不相同，但是在语境中可以确定，仍然可以如此省略。

{David's biggest headache}主语 is **what** ()省略 he is **to do** with his money. (2009 年高考)

It's going to focus on **how** ()省略 people are **to make** food part of a healthy lifestyle, and it'll show that even sweet things like cakes can contain much less sugar than they usually do. (剑桥雅思 15)

可见，这种结构非常常见且用法灵活，所以一般将其视为一种自足的结构做名词性成分即可，已不需要从名词性从句的角度进行分析。

^① 形式宾语从句的引导词 that 一般不省略。

I think it 形式宾语 best **that** we should do more exercise.



2) 名词性从句中的否定转移

在 think、believe、suppose、expect 等动词后，宾语从句中的否定常转移到主句上，中文翻译一般需要还原。

I don't believe he will go. = I believe he will not go. 我认为他不会走。

I don't think it's fair to have them as pets when we have such a limited knowledge of them. (2009 年高考) = I think it is not fair to... 我认为在不了解它们的时候就将它们作为宠物是不公平的。

I don't think we have enough information for our presentation, but we have to give it tomorrow. (2011 年 6 月六级一卷) = I think we don't have enough time... 我认为我们没有足够的时间.....

2.2 定语从句

定语从句 (attributive clause) 即用从句做定语，根据定语从句修饰的对象不同分两种情况：

1 修饰名词：先行词 + 引导词 + 简单句 2

2 修饰主句：整个主句 + 引导词 + 简单句 2

在第二种情况下，从句修饰整个主句时并非做严格意义上的定语，而是表示从句与主句的某种关系，加之定语从句修饰主句中的某个名词（先行词）也是表示一种「关系」，所以有些语法书上将定语从句统称为关系分句 (relative clause)。相应地，关系分句的引导词被称为「关系词」，包括关系代词和关系副词。本书遵循通行做法仍然称这种类型的从句为定语从句，但是也可依照惯例采用「关系词」（关系代词、关系副词）的用法。

关系词作为定语从句的引导词，符合从句引导词的一般接续规则，即「关系代词 + 不完整句」「关系副词 + 完整句子」。

2.2.1 关系代词 + 不完整句

引导词	例句
that	<p>Near the end of the nineteenth century, companies that were devoted to the production of ads came to be known as "advertising agencies." (2011 年高考)</p> <p>It was known in biblical times, and is mentioned in several books of the Bible, both as an ingredient that was mixed with oils for anointing people's bodies, and also as a token indicating friendship among lovers and friends. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>When people with a high need for achievement have an extra half hour of time or an extra ounce of energy, they'll unconsciously allocate it to activities that yield the most tangible accomplishments. (2014 年专八)</p>



which	<p>These companies, which long reaped big profits as textbook publishers, have boasted that their new online offerings, when pushed to students through universities they partner with, represent the future of the industry. (2018年6月四级一卷)</p> <p>Within two weeks, he was talking for the first time with <u>the board of Hartford Financial Services Group, which named him CEO and chairman on September 29.</u> (2011年考研)</p> <p>At that point, parents start wishing they had begun working with their children at a very young age to build <u>a culture in which children instinctively behave respectfully toward one another, obey their parents, and choose the right thing to do.</u> (2014年专八)</p>
who	<p>Volunteers read two passages, on about <u>a man who led a life of leisure</u> and another about <u>a man who was over-worked and over-scheduled.</u> (2017年12月六级三卷)</p> <p><u>Anyone who understands the functioning of a compass</u> is aware that Earth has a magnetic field. (托福TPO60)</p> <p>Although there may be some truth in the view that Rembrandt was <u>an entrepreneur who made some aesthetic decisions on the basis of what he knew the market wanted,</u> Alpers' emphasis on economic factors sacrifices discussions of the aesthetic qualities that make Rembrandt's work unique. (LSAT)</p>
whom	<p>They rose in the ranks not by being friendly but by smoking cigarettes, breaking rules and playing jokes on <u>others, among whom I soon found myself.</u> (2019年高考)</p> <p>In Europe it took a little longer, mainly because there were more small <u>producers for whom the costs of sound were prohibitive,</u> and in other parts of the world problems with rights or access to equipment delayed the shift to sound production for a few more years (though cinemas in major cities may have been wired in order to play foreign sound films). (托福TPO12)</p> <p><u>These two giants, neither of whom has been treated kindly by history,</u> were James Gordon Bennett and Horace Greeley. (2019年专八)</p>
whose	<p>It is not just <u>the extra-tall whose needs are not being met.</u> (2011年高考)</p> <p>In this book about the exploration of the earth's surface, I have confined myself to <u>those whose travels were real</u> and who also aimed at more than personal discovery. (剑桥雅思15)</p>



	Will their hard-won brand luster be forever cheapened, especially for items <u>whose</u> allure depends on their being ridiculously priced? (2013 年专八)
as ^①	<p>I hate tipping because I believe I would be in a better place if <u>pay decisions regarding employees were simply left up to their employers, as is the custom in virtually every other industry.</u> (2016 年 12 月四级一卷)</p> <p>So far <u>as is known, the sequence of bases along the chain is irregular.</u> (SAT)</p> <p>Michelson's work is valuable as ethnography, as a reflection of the day-to-day responsibilities of Mesquakie women, yet <u>as is often the case with life-passage studies, it presents little of the central character's psychological motivation.</u> (LSAT)</p>

2.2.2 关系副词 + 完整句子

引导词	例句
when	<p>Last winter <u>when</u> I went here again, they had a big separate house to raise dozens of chicken. (2018 年高考)</p> <p>But their lack of self-imagery – at <u>a time when the Egyptians were carving and painting representations of themselves all over their temples</u> – is only part of the mystery. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>There will surely come <u>a day when things go back to "normal"</u>; retail sales even inched up in January after sinking for the previous six months. (2013 年专八)</p>
where	<p>We are at <u>a point where</u> in much of the developed world the vast majority of young people grew up playing video games, and an increasingly high percentage of adults play these video games too. (2016 年 12 月四级三卷)</p> <p>Willis's company was active in <u>the tea trade between China and Britain, where</u> speed could bring shipowners both profits and prestige, so Cutty Sark was designed to make the journey more quickly than any other ship. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>Intertribal activities, on the other hand, reinforce native American identity along <u>a broader front, where</u> this identity is directly threatened by outside influences. (LSAT)</p>

^① 将 as 视为关系代词是一个具有争议的语法点，部分词典只收录 as 的介词、连词、副词词性，并无代词词性。如果认为 as 是关系代词，则 as 指代整个主句；如果认为 as 不具有代词词性，则可以将 as 视为连词引导状语从句，后接省略的完整句子，比如 as we all know = as we all know (it), as is known = as (it) is known, 其中 it = 整个主句。将 as 视为关系代词的分析比较简洁，本书采用这一分析 ([8.1.1-2 as...as...](#))。



why	<p>In other words, there's a reason <u>why</u> people like to gamble. (2016年12月四级三卷)</p> <p><u>One reason why</u> preschoolers fail to comprehend the stories they hear is that they are physiologically immature. (托福TPO6)</p> <p><u>The other great reason why</u> Paris in winter is so much better than Paris in spring and fall is that after the end of the August holidays and the return of chic Parisian women to their city, the restaurant-opening season truly begins hopping. (2013年专八)</p>
-----	--

2.2.3 定语从句注意事项

1) 限制性定语从句 vs 非限制性定语从句

定语从句分为限制性 (restrictive attributive clause) 和非限制性 (non-restrictive attributive clause)，限制性定语即用定语从句给主句限定某种范围，非限制性定语从句则只对主句做补充说明。用数学语言比较容易分析：设主句 = 集合 A，定语从句 = d，整个复杂句 = 集合 W，则有 $A \cap d = W$ 。

① 限制性定语从句

$W \in A$ ，即主句的范围经过限制性定语从句的限定之后缩小了，整个句子所表示的范围只是主句的范围的一个子集。或者反过来说，去掉定语从句，名词的范围会扩大。一般而言，限制性定语从句和主句之间不用逗号隔开。

The old man has a son who is in the army. (老人在陆军服役的儿子 ∈ 他所有的儿子)

People who take physical exercise live longer. (进行体育锻炼的人 ∈ 所有人)

China is a country that has a long history. (一个有悠久历史的国家 ∈ a country 泛指的所有国家)

② 非限制性定语从句

$W = A$ ，即加上非限制性定语从句，主句的范围并未缩小。或者反过来说，去掉定语从句，名词的范围会扩大。一般而言，非限制性定语从句和主句之间用逗号隔开。

The old man has a son, who is in the army. (老人只有一个儿子)

The earth, which goes around the sun, is a ball-like planet. (地球只有一个)

I'm going back home tomorrow, when he will come back to Shanghai. (对于任何具体的一天来说，「明天」只有一天)

2) that 代替关系副词 when/ where/ why

当先行词是 the day/ the year/ the time/ the place/ the reason 等表示时间、地点、原因的词时，且从句是限制性定语从句，可以用 that 代替关系副词 when/ where/ why，且可省略。关于这种用法中 that 的词性，一种观点认为 that 是关系代词，一种认为是关系副词。从引导词的一般接续规则出发，本书支持第二种观点，认为此时 that 是关系副词。

Do you still remember the day (when/that) we first met?

The last time (when/that) I saw her, she looked very well.



I haven't seen them since the year (when/that) they got married.

I don't know any place (where/that) you can get a better deal.

That wasn't the reason (why/that) he lied to you.

The exact time and place that crops were first cultivated successfully is uncertain. (托福 TPO33)

3) 关系词的省略

1 关系代词在限制性定语从句中做宾语时可省略^①。

the girl (who/whom) I saw (Oxford)

It also doesn't require a new type of technology (that) people aren't already familiar with. (2019 年高考)

In Australia, the thylacine, more commonly known as the Tasmanian tiger, is another extinct creature (which) genetic scientists are striving to bring back to life. (剑桥雅思 15)

2 关系代词在限制性定语从句中做表语时可省略。

He still talks like the man (who/that) he was ten years ago.

She finally became the singer (who/that) she always wanted to be.

3 关系代词在限制性定语从句中做主语，且从句内部是 there be 结构时可省略。

This is the fastest train (that) there has ever been.

He asked for the latest book (that) there was on the subject.

4 定语从句符合「关系代词 be X」的结构，可省略「关系代词 be」，变为 X 做后置定语/同位语。X 可能是非谓语动词，也可能是名词、形容词、介宾短语等。

For example, there's a problem that needs to be addressed immediately, resulting in a dispute over who should be the one () (省略 who/that is to fix it.) (2017 年 12 月一卷)

"It takes a lot for any student," Whaley explains, "especially for a student (who is) learning English as their new language, to feel confident enough to say, 'I don't know, but I want to know.'" (2019 年高考)

People (who are) motivated by pleasure seem to suffer particularly badly. (剑桥雅思 13)

Zhang Qiaofeng, (who is) a Peking University graduate, has quitted his job to educate his own 8-year-old boy and other youngsters, told the Global Times that he withdrew his son from primary school after a month. (2012 年专八)

Through association with people (who are) meaningful to us, we achieve a sense of security, love, acceptance, companionship, and personal worth. (托福 TPO12)

^① 关系代词 whose 和 as 不可省略，因为在「whose + 名词」整体做成分，而 as 只能做主语。

We can only speculate as to how high or low the inventors of true numerals were in the scribal hierarchy, but it stands to reason that this laborsaving innovation would have been the brainchild of the lower-ranking types whose drudgery it eased. (托福 TPO53)

So far as is known, the sequence of bases along the chain is irregular. (SAT)



For those (**who are**) in poverty as a result of joblessness, there are social programs available that provide a minimum standard of living. (GMAT)

5 上述「that 代替关系副词 when/ where/ why」的情况，可省略关系副词 when/ where/ why/ that

The next time ()省略 when/that you have a conversation with someone who makes you feel liked, notice what he does with his eyes. (2012 年 12 月六级)

Only when he reached the tea-house did he realize it was the same place ()省略 where/that he'd been in last year. (2011 年高考)

The tourist increase is one key reason ()省略 why/that the city's population is down from 175,000 in the 1950s. (2018 年 6 月四级)

Now that I have talked about the two focuses and how they affect people, I want to look at the idea that the way ()省略 that leaders behave, or their style of leading, can affect the focus that followers adopt in a specific situation. (剑桥雅思 10)

4) 定语从句 **vs** 同位语从句

特殊疑问词可引导定语从句和同位语从句，形式都是「名词 + 引导词 + 简单句 2」。在实际语言使用中，根据从句的一般结构和语义判断句子正误即可，不必区分特殊疑问词引导词引导的到底是定语从句还是同位语从句。如果确有必要，可以从从句与它所修饰的名词之间的关系考虑。

1 如果名词在语义上等于该从句，即为同位语从句。

What can be inferred from the fact that the milkman had the key to the boy's house? (2011 年高考)

Now that I have talked about the two focuses and how they affect people, I want to look at the idea that the way leaders behave, or their style of leading, can affect the focus that followers adopt in a specific situation. (剑桥雅思 10)

It's an exciting notion, the idea that one's very self could be broadened by the mastery of two or more languages. (2018 年专八)

2 如果名词在语义上不等于该从句，即为定语从句。

A second important reason why immigrants have traditionally been drawn to the United States is the belief that everyone has an equal chance to enter a race and succeed in the game. (2018 年专四)

One variation on vertical farming that has been developed is to grow plants in stacked trays that move on rails. (剑桥雅思 11)

There is no reason why the Earth should always pass through the stream's exact center, so the time interval between the two bursts of activity would vary from one year to the next. (GMAT)

2.3 状语从句

大多数状语从句以连词引导，符合从句的一般结构：



状语从句 = 连词引导词 + 完整句子

状语从句的引导词可以根据首字母总结为「PGL on a white bus」。

首字母	引导词
P	provided that
G	given that
L	lest、like
O	once
N	no matter + 疑问词、no matter if、no sooner...than...、now (that)、once
A	after、although、anywhere、as、as if、as long as、as much as、as soon as、as though、as...as...
W	when、where、whereas、whether、while、疑问词 ever
H	hardly...when...、however
I	if、in case that、in order that、in the event that
T	than、the way、the...the...、though、till
E	even if、even though、everywhere
B	barely...when...、because、before、by the time
U	unless、until
S	scarcely...when...、since、so that、so...that...、such...that...

2.3.1 九种状语从句

根据主句和从句的语义关系，状语从句分为 9 种。部分引导词可以用于多种状语从句，所以不可完全依赖引导词判定状语从句的类型。

1) 时间状语从句

引导词	例句
after	<p><u>After</u> the other passengers arrived, we had our first dinner on the boat. (2009 年高考)</p> <p>By the middle of the 19th century, production of cinnamon reached 1,000 tons a year, <u>after</u> a lower grade quality of the spice <u>became acceptable to European tastes</u>. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>The children of the First Depression were saving string and preaching sacrifice <u>long after</u> the skies cleared. (2013 年专八)</p>
as	<p><u>As</u> I sat blocked and clueless for two solid days, I momentarily wondered if I couldn't just call an expert on the subject matter which I was tackling, or someone who took the class previously, to get me going. (2017 年 12 月四级一卷)</p>



	<p>People on the job often develop close relationships with coworkers <u>as they come to share gripes, jokes, gossip, and satisfactions.</u> (托福 TPO13)</p> <p>You'll feel it <u>as you cross the 6.8 km-long Great Belt Bridge:</u> Denmark's bountiful wind, so fierce even on a calm summer's day that it threatens to shove your car into the waves below. (2013 年专八)</p>
as soon as ^①	<p>As soon as I saw the location, I knew this was it. (2017 年 6 月四级三卷)</p> <p>The Dutch took over the cinnamon trade from the Portuguese <u>as soon as they arrived in Ceylon.</u> (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>Musicians in Austria composed innovative music for the Broadwood piano <u>as soon as the instrument became available.</u> (LSAT)</p>
before	<p>On top of the tragic loss of life, the accident in California will cast a long shadow over the future of space tourism, <u>even before</u> it has <u>properly begun.</u> (2015 年 12 月六级三卷)</p> <p>After their final demise, a millennium passed <u>before</u> really large-scale cities appeared once more in South Asia. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>He bought the paper and some cigars and drank a Coca-Cola or two <u>before</u> he went in to breakfast with his father. (2019 年专八)</p>
by the time ^②	<p>We are usually tired already <u>by the time</u> we get on a plane, and the crowded space and unstable internet connection make work more challenging. (2019 年 6 月六级二卷)</p> <p>In addition, results from other types of preschool readiness programs indicate that those who participate and graduate are less likely to repeat grades, and they are more likely to complete school than readiness program, for every dollar spent on the program, taxpayers saved seven dollars <u>by the time</u> the graduates <u>reached the age of 27.</u> (托福 TPO31)</p> <p>Some researchers even claim that <u>by the time</u> students are in high school, they know they cannot take textbooks literally. (GMAT)</p>

^① 「as soon as + 完整句子」可以细致分析为「as 副词 soon 副词 as 连词 + 完整句子」，其中 as 副词表示「和...一样」，as 连词表示「和...相比」，「as 连词 + 完整句子」才是比较状语从句，但是一般将 as soon as 整体视为引导词引导时间状语从句即可（[2.3.4-1 平级比较](#)）。

^② 「by the time + 完整句子」可以细致分析为介宾短语 by the time 做状语，后面是「(when/that) + 完整句子」做 the time 的定语从句，但是一般将 by the time 整体视为引导词即可。后文的「in order that」「in case that」「in the event that」同理。



barely...when... hardly...when... scarcely...when... no sooner...than... ^①	She had barely finished <u>when</u> he came in. (Oxford) Hardly had he opened the newspaper <u>when</u> the telephone rang. (Oxford) Scarcely had she finished <u>when</u> the door opened. (Oxford) No sooner had she said it <u>than</u> she burst into tears. (Oxford)
since	I've known him <u>since</u> I was 12. (Oxford) Since our twins began learning to walk, my wife and I have kept telling them that our sliding glass door is just a window. (2020 年高考) Since Google announced in 2010 that it had been trialling self-driving cars on the streets of California, progress in this field has quickly gathered pace. (剑桥雅思 15)
the moment ^②	The moment the author got down to the river bank he saw Ma Shwe was holding the calf against the rushing water. (2009 年高考) The moment you position yourself, you become exposed, and if you fail in that you are in trouble. (2014 年 12 月六级一卷) The moment I closed my eyes, I fell asleep. (Collins)
till/until	I try not to go online <u>till</u> my day's writing is finished, and I moved from Manhattan to rural Japan in part so I could more easily survive for long stretches entirely on foot. (2012 年 12 月六级一卷) Factories won't ship your product <u>till</u> they get paid. (2013 年专四) With the conclusion of a burst of activity, the lactic acid level is high in the body fluids, leaving the large animal vulnerable to attack <u>until</u> the acid is reconverted, via oxidative metabolism, by the liver into glucose, which is then sent (in part) back to the muscles for glycogen resynthesis. (GRE)
when	When the container was tipped over, sometimes an object fell out and sometimes it didn't. (2018 年 12 月四级三卷) When audiences found out the truth they were often outraged with Cope, and one music lover even tried to punch him. (剑桥雅思 13) <u>Even when</u> his spirits were low, Wilhelm could still wrinkle his forehead in a pleasing way. (2019 年专八)

^① 「no sooner...than + 完整句子」可以细致分析为「[no sooner]副词-状语...than 连词 + 完整句子」，其中「than 连词 + 完整句子」才是比较状语从句，但是因为比较的是时间状语，所以也可以整体理解为时间状语从句。

^② 「the moment + 完整句子」可以细致分析为名词词组 the moment 做状语，后面是「(when/that) + 完整句子」做 the moment 的定语从句，但是一般将 the moment 整体视为引导词引导状语从句即可。另外，the moment 可以换成其他时间单位词，比如 the second、the day 等。后文的 the way 同理。



whenever	<p>Whenever a customer would inquire about my book, the volunteer would take him over to the shelf and point to it. (2013年6月六级一卷)</p> <p>Whenever a word including a syllable in which the sound "sag" was to be written, the sign for "sag" could be used to express that syllable with the remaining syllables of the word expressed by other signs.) (托福TPO26)</p> <p>These days, whenever I cast my eyes upon the stacks of shoes and hangers of shirts, sweaters and jackets, I see water. (2012年专八)</p>
while	<p>While I was wondering what I could do next, I heard the sound of a mother's love. (2009年高考)</p> <p>They continue to do so as the flower develops and while the fruit matures. (托福TPO34)</p> <p>The stylist offered not just the usual coffee or tea but a complimentary nail-polish change while I waited for my hair to dry. (2013年专八)</p>

2) 地点状语从句

引导词	例句
anywhere	<p>Sit anywhere you like. </p> <p>You can't camp anywhere you like these days. </p> <p>They could go anywhere they want. (2018年12月四级三卷)</p>
everywhere	<p>Everywhere I go, it's the same. (Oxford)</p> <p>Everywhere he went he was introduced as the current United States Open Champion. (Collins)</p>
where	<p>Where there's a scandal, there's a reporter. (Oxford)</p> <p>Where the birds were abundant, people believed there was an ever-lasting supply and killed them by the thousands. (2014年高考)</p> <p>What places are there for swimming where you live? (剑桥雅思 15)</p>
wherever	<p>She could locate her friends wherever they were. (2017年6月四级二卷)</p> <p>They are found wherever fast rivers carrying loads of coarse sediment once flowed. (托福TPO1)</p> <p>Although surveys of medieval legislation, guild organization, and terminology used to designate different medical practitioners have demonstrated that numerous medical specialties were recognized in Europe during the Middle Ages, most historians</p>



	continue to equate the term "woman medical practitioner," <u>wherever</u> they encounter it in medieval records, with "midwife." (LSAT)
--	---

3) 原因状语从句

引导词	例句
as	<p><u>As</u> it's Sunday, the smaller shops are shut. (Oxford)</p> <p>They are regularly sent booklets, but they barely read them <u>as</u> they have so much paperwork to deal with. (Collins)</p> <p><u>As</u> it was getting late, I decided to book into a hotel. (Cambridge)</p>
because	<p>While they sound efficient and cost-saving, a recent study reports that they are not effective, primarily <u>because</u> depressed patients are not likely to engage with them or stick with them. (2019年6月四级三卷)</p> <p>Mann concluded that a passive, boring activity is best for creativity <u>because</u> it allows the mind to wander. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>They are called kits <u>because</u> we expect teachers to build their own lessons out of the materials we provide, which implies that large amounts may be discarded. (2017年专八)</p>
now (that)	<p><u>Now that</u> you've listed your strengths, list your imperfections. (2020年高考)</p> <p><u>Now that</u> we know much more about ancient exchange and commerce, we know that, because no one aspect of trade was an overriding cause of cultural change or evolution in commercial practices, trade can never be looked on as a unifying factor or as a primary agent of ancient civilization. (托福 TPO41)</p> <p>Ironically, <u>now that</u> photography is securely established as a fine art, many photographers find it pretentious or irrelevant to label it as such. (GRE)</p>
since	<p>She had been worrying ever <u>since</u> the letter arrived. (Oxford)</p> <p><u>Since</u> Google announced in 2010 that it had been trialling self-driving cars on the streets of California, progress in this field has quickly gathered pace. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p>Freshmen are showing up already stressed out, according to the latest research study that reported students' emotional health levels at their lowest <u>since</u> the survey started in 1985. (2014年专四)</p>



4) 目的状语从句

引导词	例句
in order that	I came here <u>in order that</u> I might talk to you. (Oxford) In order that you can sign the form, please print it out and mail it to this address. (Cambridge) They fought <u>in order that</u> others might have peace. (Collins)
so that so...that...	An actor and actress stood in front of the scene <u>so that</u> they looked as if they were at the water's edge on an island. (2012 年高考) The ancestors of these animals already had a circulation system, and they were mobile, <u>so that</u> they could move to water to drink. (托福 TPO44) The success of Sci-Hub, which relies on researchers passing on copies they have themselves legally accessed, shows the legal ecosystem has lost legitimacy among its users and must be transformed <u>so that</u> it works for all participants. (2020 年考研)

5) 结果状语从句

引导词	例句
so that ^① so...that...	Mr. Basille even had a key to out house, for those times when it was <u>so cold outside that we put the box indoors</u> , so that the milk wouldn't freeze. (2011 年高考) The company seems to have concluded that its reputation in Vermont is already <u>so damaged that it has nothing left to lose by going to war with the state</u> . (2012 年考研) One company owned by the Swedish government has found the abiogenic theory <u>so persuasive that it has started exploratory drilling for gas or oil in a granite formation called the Siljan Ring</u> — not the best place to look for gas or oil if one believes they are derived from organic compounds, because granite forms from magma (molten rock) and contains no organic sediments. (LSAT)
such that such...that...	He is <u>such a bad-tempered person that no one can work with him for long</u> . (Cambridge) The regulatory environment is different in each country, <u>such that it is not possible to put together two equities dealing operations on the same platform</u> . (Collins)

^① 「so that.../so...that...」可引导结果状语从句和目的状语从句，两者高度类似，主要依据语义进行区分。



The issues raised by the Pico unionists had **such** a strong human component **that** differences within the community became secondary to larger concerns for social justice and workers' rights. (LSAT)

6) 让步状语从句

引导词	例句
although	<p>Although our "act" would last only for a short time, we could see quite a number of interesting things. (2012 年高考)</p> <p>Although more than half of Harvard undergraduates end up in law, medicine or business, future doctors and lawyers must study a non-specialist liberal-arts degree before embarking on a professional qualification. (2011 年考研)</p> <p>Although these observations are true, Pessen overestimates their importance by concluding from them that the undoubted progress toward inequality in the late eighteenth century continued in the Jacksonian period and that the United States was a class-ridden, plutocratic society even before industrialization. (GRE)</p>
as	<p>Wealthy as he is, Mark is not a happy man. (2012 年专四)</p> <p>In the old days when he was a college freshman and wore a beanie on his large blonde head his father used to say that, big as he was, he could charm a bird out of a tree. (2019 年专四)</p> <p>Symbolic of national unity as they claim to be, their very history - and sometimes the way they behave today - embodies outdated and indefensible privileges and inequalities. (2015 年考研英语一)</p>
even if even though	<p>Even if you can't solve it all, you can solve a piece of it. (2012 年高考)</p> <p>Even though they see going to college as a fairly achievable goal, a majority — 52 percent — think that young people do not need a four-year college education in order to be successful. (2017 年 12 月四级二卷)</p> <p>The White House argued that Arizona's laws conflicted with its enforcement priorities, even if state laws complied with federal statutes to the letter. (2013 年考研)</p>



no matter + 疑问词 ^①	<p>Successful people tend to be successful <u>no matter where</u> they go <u>to school</u>. (2018年6月六级三卷)</p> <p>As long as the birds could see the Sun, <u>no matter how</u> their <u>surroundings were altered</u>, they went directly to the correct food box. (托福TPO11)</p> <p>The reality, however, is that <u>no matter how</u> convinced we all are <u>that digital is the way to go</u>, finding real satisfaction will probably take more than a few simple clicks. (2015年专八)</p>
no matter if ^②	<p>We need neighbours that meet the European Union standards, <u>no matter if</u> and when they become members. </p> <p><u>No matter if</u> you have ten stores, or 100 stores, or 1,000 stores or 10,000 stores, everything starts from one store, and everything starts from satisfying one customer. (The Economist)</p>
though	<p><u>Though</u> he didn't come from a farming family, from a young age Tim Joseph was fascinated by the idea of living off the land. (2019年12月六级三卷)</p> <p>And <u>though</u> print ad sales still dwarf their online and mobile counterparts, revenue from print is still declining. (2016年考研)</p> <p>Dressed up in white flannels I went over to his lawn a little after seven and wandered around rather ill-at-ease among swirls and eddies of people I didn't know — <u>though</u> here and there was a face I had noticed on the commuting train. (2016年专八)</p>
while	<p>It clearly showed that <u>while</u> likability can lead to healthy <u>adjustment</u>, high status has just the opposite effect on us. (2019年高考)</p> <p>So, what Kennedy was referring to was that <u>while</u> GDP has been <u>the most common method for measuring the economic activity of nations</u>, as a measure, it is no longer enough. (2017年考研)</p> <p>The problem is that almost any punishment — even the disgrace of being charged with a crime — is sufficient to deter the middle class, <u>while for members of the underclass, probation may be translated as "I beat it."</u> (2016年专四)</p>

^① 「no matter + 疑问词」可以细致分析为「疑问词 + 句子」组成「特殊疑问句的陈述语序」，而名词词组 no matter 做这个「特殊疑问句的陈述语序」的状语，整体再做让步状语从句，但是一般将「no matter + 疑问词」整体视为引导词即可。

^② 「no matter if + 完整句子」可以细致分析为名词词组 no matter 做「if 连词 + 完整句子」的状语，if 在此处表示「是否」，整体做状语，但是一般将「no matter if」整体视为引导词即可。另外，注意 no matter if = whether，都表示「无论」，在正式文体中一般用 whether。



where	<p>She likes dogs, <u>where</u> I prefer cats. (Oxford)</p> <p>Where some would have given up, she and her coach were determined to lift their game. (Collins)</p> <p>Where once researchers took no notice of such findings, now a more nuanced understanding of oxytocin's effects is propelling investigations down new lines. (剑桥雅思 13)</p>
whether	<p>You're going <u>whether</u> you like it or not! (Oxford)</p> <p>The more muscle you have, the more fat you'll burn, <u>whether</u> you're working out or fast asleep. (Collins)</p> <p>Whether we've been stolen from, lied to, misled, or cheated on, there are different levels of losing trust. (2015 年高考)</p>
whereas ^①	<p>Why do some students give up when they encounter difficulty, <u>whereas</u> others who are no more skilled continue to strive and learn? (2016 年 12 月四级二卷)</p> <p>The legal issues in the case are obscure: <u>whereas</u> the Supreme Court has ruled that states do have some regulatory authority over nuclear power, legal scholars say that Vermont case will offer a precedent-setting test of how far those powers extend. (2012 年考研)</p> <p>Brian Swann suggests an additional explanation: tribal poetry is oral, <u>whereas</u> Europeans arrived in the New World with a deeply ingrained belief in the primacy of the written word. (GMAT)</p>
疑问词 ever ^② (特殊疑问句的陈述语序)	<p>In nearly every language, <u>however</u> the words are phrased, the most basic division in cinema history lies between films that are mute and films that speak. (托福 TPO12)</p> <p>Whenever the Earth passes through a meteor stream, a meteor shower occurs. (GMAT)</p> <p>Wherever the crime novels of P. D. James are discussed by critics, there is a tendency on the one hand to exaggerate her merits and on the other to castigate her as a genre writer who is getting above herself. (LSAT)</p>

7) 方式状语从句

引导词	例句
-----	----

^① 「whereas + 完整句子」是状语从句还是复合句存在争议，本书从「状语一般可以移动」考虑，认为「whereas + 完整句子」是状语从句，因为「主句 + whereas + 完整句子」和「Whereas + 完整句子, 主句」均成立。

^② 「疑问词 ever + 句子」可以细致分析为「特殊疑问句的陈述语序」做状语从句。



as	<p>Many Native Americans value silence and feel it is a basic part of communicating among people, <u>just as some traditional Chinese and Thai persons do.</u> (2016 年高考)</p> <p>And the ban on ultra-thin models seems to go beyond protecting models from starving themselves to death — <u>as some have done.</u> (2016 年考研)</p> <p>Brits in 2006 huddled in much the same categories <u>as they did</u> when they were asked in 1949. (2011 年专八)</p>
as if ^① as though	<p><u>As if</u> you needed another reason to hate the gym, it now turns out that exercise can exhaust not only your muscles, but also your eyes. (2017 年 6 月四级二卷)</p> <p>Reviewing translocation of amphibians and reptiles, researchers C. Kenneth Dodd and Richard A. Siegel concluded that most projects have not demonstrated success as conservation techniques and should not be advocated <u>as though</u> they were acceptable management and mitigation practices. (托福 TPO37)</p> <p>Theoretically, this convection would carry the continental plates along <u>as though</u> they were on a conveyor belt and would provide the forces needed to produce the split that occurs along the ridge. (GMAT)</p>
like ^②	<p>You don't know him <u>like</u> I do. (Oxford)</p> <p><u>Like</u> any good cook book will tell you, don't let the milk boil. (Cambridge)</p> <p>People are strolling, buying ice cream for their children, <u>just like</u> they do every Sunday. (Collins)</p>
the way	<p>The music can't be presented today <u>the way</u> it was in 1908 or 1958. (2017 年高考)</p> <p>The literature of the Sumerians was treasured throughout the Near East, and long after Sumerian ceased to be spoken, the Babylonians and Assyrians and others kept it alive as a literary language, <u>the way</u> Europeans kept Latin alive after the fall of Rome. (托福 TPO46)</p> <p>We keep trying to use welfare and prison to change people — to make them think and behave <u>the way</u> we do — when the truth is the incentives work only for those who already think the way we</p>

^① 「as if/ though + 完整句子」可以分析为「{as if}连词词组 + 完整句子」，「as if/ though」须整体理解，不可分割。

^② 部分传统语法书认为这种用法是错误的，需要用 as。



	do: who view today's action with an eye on the future. (2016 年专四)
--	---

8) 条件状语从句

⌚ 2.3.2 四种条件句

9) 比较状语从句

⌚ 2.3.4 比较结构

2.3.2 四种条件句

英语中的条件状语从句根据条件的真实性、假设性等分为四种，分别称为零条件句、第一条件句、第二条件句、第三条件句，前两种是真实条件句，后两种是非真实条件句（虚拟语气）。

真实条件句	零条件句	表示普遍真理、客观事实，以及现在或过去的习惯动作
	第一条件句	推测可能发生的事的后果，或对可能发生的情况提出要求
非真实条件句 (虚拟语气)	第二条件句	虚拟现在的情况，并想象后果
		虚拟将来预期，想象不大可能发生的事及其后果
	第三条件句	虚拟过去的情况并想象后果

1) 零条件句

零条件句表示普遍真理、客观事实，以及现在或过去的习惯动作。主句和从句都用一般现在时或一般过去时，可以用公式表示为：**If do — do 或 If did — did**。

If you heat snow, it melts. 雪受热就回融化。（客观物理规律）

If I say something, I mean it. 我说到做到。（现在习惯）

If it snowed, I went skiing. 下雪天，我就去滑雪。（过去习惯）

If there are very frequent bushfires in a region, this encourages grass to grow afterwards, while if the bushfires are rather less frequent, this results in the growth of eucalyptus forests. (剑桥雅思 15)

2) 第一条件句

第一条件句即大家熟知的条件状语从句，典型引导词是 if，典型构成是「主将从现」，可以用公式表示为：**If do — will do**。实际还包括 **If did — would do**。

用于表示推测可能发生的事的后果。

I'll probably have a heart attack if I see a spider.

You can succeed only if you work hard.

也可表示对可能发生的情况提出要求。

Give me a call if you need anything.



引导词	例句
as long as ^①	<p>There's an ancient legend that <u>as long as</u> these eggs are made, evil will not prevail in the world. (2017年6月四级一卷)</p> <p>If you see a conversation as a fight or competition, you can win by cheating <u>as long as</u> you don't get caught. (2019年考研)</p> <p>So some bushfires are actually essential for the eucalyptus to survive <u>as long as</u> they are not too frequent. (剑桥雅思 15)</p>
given that ^②	<p>And the quit rates were particularly convincing <u>given that</u> before the study started, most of the people had said they'd rather cut down gradually before quitting. (2017年6月四级二卷)</p> <p><u>Given that</u> a fundamental goal of education is to transfer the control of learning from teachers to pupils, improving pupils' learning to learn techniques should be a major outcome of the school experience, especially for the highly competent. (剑桥雅思 10)</p> <p>An examination of the theory's underpinnings may be critical at this point, especially <u>given that</u> native Americans themselves chafe most against the Pan-Indian classification. (LSAT)</p>
if	<p><u>If</u> you are a teenager living in certain parts of the province, you could be eligible for this program, which provides eight weeks of paid employment along with training. (2018年高考)</p> <p><u>If</u> you look at this map, you'll see the familiar outline of the park, with the river forming the northern boundary, and a gate in each of the other three walls. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p><u>If</u> you study the root causes of business disasters, over and over you'll find this predisposition toward endeavors that offer immediate gratification. (2014年专八)</p>
in case (that) ^③	<p>You'd better take the keys <u>in case</u> I'm out. (Oxford)</p> <p><u>In case</u> I am late, don't wait to start dinner. (Collins)</p>

① 「as long as」本义为「距离/时间与...一样长」，引导比较状语从句，引申为「只要」，引导条件状语从句。

She looks at it for twice as long as she did at the previous card. (2013年高考)

② 「given that + 完整句子」可以细致分析为「that 连词 + 完整句子」做 given 过去分词的宾语从句，整体是非谓语动词做状语，但是 given 的逻辑主语是虚指的 it，而非主句的主语。一般而言，将 given that 整体视为引导词即可。不论哪一种分析，「given that + 完整句子」部分都是状语。后文的「provided that + 完整句子」同理。

③ 「in case (that) + 完整句子」可以细致分析为「in case」介宾短语做状语，后接定语从句「where/that + 完整句子」，但是一般将「in case (that)」整体分析为引导词即可。



	Even those artists who were most dependent on photography became reluctant to admit that they made use of it, <u>in case this compromised their professional standing.</u> (托福 TPO22)
in the event that	<p>In the event that I can't come back by seven, you can eat without me. (Collins)</p> <p>Four years earlier, almost to the day, we had sat in the same booth deciding what we would do <u>in the event that</u> one of us died. (Collins)</p> <p>Moreover, even in the case of administrative contracts, French law requires that <u>in the event that the government unilaterally modifies the terms of the contract</u>, it must compensate the contractor for any increased burden resulting from the government's action. (LSAT)</p>
lest	<p>Male directors mentor young men but are reluctant to get friendly with young women, <u>lest the relationship be misinterpreted.</u> (2012 年 12 月六级)</p> <p>When I called my husband to ask him to check some specs online, the salesman offered a pre-emptive discount, <u>lest the surfing turn up the same model cheaper in another store.</u> (2013 年专八)</p> <p>Lest we think that slavery existed in fact before it did in law, Oscar and Mary Handlin assure us that the status of Black people down to the 1660's was that of servants. (GRE)</p>
once ^①	<p>No matter how attractive they look in the store, <u>once I get them home</u> they're unfailingly dry, hard, and tasteless. (2015 年高考)</p> <p>Rage Against the Haze failed <u>once state funding was cut.</u> (2012 年考研)</p> <p>Once the Sun passes into its "postnuclear" phase, it will separate effectively into two different regions: an inner zone and an outer zone. (托福 TPO50)</p>
provided that	<p>A picnic will be very pleasant, <u>provided (that) we get good weather.</u> (Oxford)</p> <p>In fact, going beyond compliance saves cost at the same time that it generates cash, <u>provided that management adopts the new lean and green model.</u> (2014 年 12 月六级三卷)</p>

^① once 本义为「一旦」，引导状语从句时其时间意义和条件意义往往不易细分，也不必细分。



	Provided that these surfaces are strategically located, the consequences of this combination can significantly increase the pollen-capture efficiency of a female reproductive organ. (GRE)
unless	<p>He seemed unhappy with me <u>unless I got straight A's</u> and unhappy with my boyfriends if their fathers were not as "successful" as he was. (2008 年高考)</p> <p>The US Supreme Court frowns on sex-based classifications <u>unless they are designed to address an "important" policy interest.</u> (2020 年考研)</p> <p>America will continue paying a high price in civil and ethnic unrest <u>unless the nation commits itself to programs that help the urban poor lead productive and respectable lives.</u> (2017 年专八)</p>
the...the... ^{①②}	<p>The more one works, the more one feels exploited. (2017 年 12 月六级三卷)</p> <p>The more sophisticated societies became, the better they could influence desirable occurrences through ritualized theater. (托福 TPO1)</p> <p>At the same time, it became clear that the harder manufacturers worked to implement cost-cutting, the more they lost their competitive edge. (GMAT)</p>

3) 第二条件句和第三条件句

第二条件句和第三条件句的条件及结果都是非真实的（与已发生事实相反或将来不大可能发生）[5.4.3 虚拟语气](#)。

2.3.3 状语从句注意事项

1) 状语从句中的省略

① 省略「S be」

如果状语从句中的主语与从句主语相同，且从句符合「S be X」结构时，往往可以省略状语从句中「S be」部分，可用公式表示为：

$$\text{S V} + \text{连词引导词} + \text{S be X} = \text{S V} + \text{连词引导词} + \text{X}$$

① 「the...the...」引导的状语从句不符合从句的一般结构，因为引导词分布主句和从句，一般认为前一个 the 引导从句，后一个 the 接主句。「the」后接完整句子，但是要求把其中的形容词或副词的比较级前置。

② 「the...the...」状语从句的具体类型有争议。

如果表示已经发生的客观事实，可以视为结果状语从句：The higher he climbed, the further he looked.

如果表示客观真理，可以视为零条件句：The higher you climb, the cooler it gets.

如果表示推测将来可能发生的事情，可以视为第一条件句：The harder you work, the richer you will be.



It's easier said **than done**.

They are lacking in confidence **when competing** with men. (2019年6月四级二卷)

Merely helping a gift-giver gain access to other officials, **unless done** with clear intent to pressure those officials, is not corruption, the justices found. (2017年考研一)

Deserts contain large amounts of groundwater **when compared** to the amounts they hold in surface stores such as lakes and rivers. (托福TPO12)

He went back a step, **as if to stand** away from himself and get a better look at his shirt. (2019年专八)

② 省略「it be」

如果状语从句符合「it be X」结构时，往往可以省略状语从句中「it be」部分，可用公式表示为：

S V + 连词引导词 + it be X = S V + 连词引导词 + X

All photographs are by the author **unless otherwise stated**. (Collins)

They try to avoid work **whenever possible**. (2012年12月六级二卷)

For them the land has always just been there* something that had to be dealt with and, **if possible**, exploited — the mind-set being one of land as commodity rather than land as, well? priceless art on the scale of the "Mona Lisa." (2010年专八)

③ 省略其他成分

在部分状语从句中，可以或必须省略某些成分。

The sooner ()_{省略主谓}, the better ()_{省略 it is/will be}. (Oxford)

The higher the status (is)_{可省略}, the better ()_{省略 it is/will be}. (2019年高考)

John is as bright **as** Bob (is)_{可省略} ()_{必须省略} bright.

2) 特殊结构状语从句

状语从句的一般结构是「连词引导词 + 完整句子」，但是存在例外。

① 部分状语从句不符合上述一般结构，比如 the...the...分布于主句和从句，虽然多数情况下第一个 the 引导状语从句，第二个 the 接主句，但是也可能存在例外。比如下例中，状语从句位于主句之后，主句中未将 more 提前，more 前也没有用 the。

These range from around £500 to \$5,000, and apparently the work gets **more expensive the more** (that)_{可省略} publishers do it. (2020年考研一)

② 部分状语从句虽然符合上述一般结构，但是对主句的构成有特定要求，比如 so...that...、hardly...when...、no sooner...than...分别要求主句中必须用到 so、hardly、no sooner。



③ 部分状语从句的引导词并非单一连词，有些是其他词性的词或词组，有些是多词结构，一般整体视为引导词即可^①。

构成	引导词
副词	anywhere、everywhere
连词 + 连词	as if、as though、now (that)
副词 + 连词	as long as、as much as、as soon as、as...as...、barely...when...、even if、even though、hardly...when...、no sooner...than...、scarcely...when...、so that、so...that...
限定词 + 连词	such...that...
限定词	the...the...
介词/介宾短语	by the time...、in case that...、in order that...、in the event that...
名词词组	the moment、the way、no matter + 疑问词、no matter if
非谓语动词	given that、provided that、supposing (that)
动词原形	suppose (that)

2.3.4 比较结构

比较结构包括平级比较、比较级和最高级，与比较状语从句关系密切。

1) 平级比较 (☞ 8.1.1-2 as...as...)

平级比较用「as/so...as...」，表示比较对象就某种属性进行比较。严格来说，第一个 as 是副词，修饰其后的形容词或副词，部分情况下可替换为 so。第二个 as 一般是连词，引导比较状语从句；如果第二个 as 后只接代词或名词，则为介词，组成介宾短语做状语。

① 对象不同，属性相同

They 对象¹ were generally not as educated 属性 as {the people who remained in England}
对象² (were) 可省略 () 必须省略 educated. (GMAT)

John behaves as politely as Bob (does).

I cannot drink as sweet coffee as this.

② 对象相同，属性不同

The girl 对象 is as smart 属性¹ as she 对象 is beautiful 属性². —Down to You by Michelle Leighton

③ 对象不同，属性不同

如果对象和属性均不同，一般是比较对象 1 的属性 1 和对象 2 的属性 2 的数值或程度。

This swimming pool 对象¹ is twice as wide 属性¹ as that one 对象² is long 属性².

^① 这些非连词引导的从句，部分可以做其他语法分析，比如 the moment...、the way...可以分析为名词做状语+定语从句，provided that...、given that...、supposing (that)...可以分析为非谓语动词+宾语从句，suppose (that)...可以分析为祈使句，但是从语义的角度，一般仍然视为状语从句。



His uncle was **as** base and unworthy **as** his father had been upright and honorable. 

4 对象相同，属性相同

如果对象和属性均相同，一般是比较同一对象同一属性在不同情况下的程度。

She 对象 **is as happy** 属性 **as ()省略 she can be ()省略属性 happy.** (Collins)

If you are **so naïve as** to ask such a question, I will answer it, but it is not worth wasting words on. (2010 年专八)

Indeed, some federal and local agencies have gone **so far as** to set specific percentage goals for apportioning parts of public works contracts to minority enterprises. (GMAT)

「as X as」常见搭配

很多「as X as」搭配由于常见，往往可以整体理解。

▲ as many as/ as much as 多达

① 「as many as 介词/ as much as 介词」整体近似前置定语，往往后接数量词。

Diabete rates in 12 states have jumped significantly, now affecting **as many as 12.2%** of adults in Alabama — the state with the highest obesity rates. (2012 年 12 月六级)

According to her research, runners hit the ground with **as much as four times** their body weight per step, while race walkers, who do not leave the ground, create only about 1.4 times their body weight with each step. (2020 年高考)

② 「as many as 连词/ as much as 连词」整体近似连词引导词，引导比较状语从句 ([2.3.1-9 比较状语从句](#)) 。

According to most calculations, race walkers moving at a pace of six miles per hour would burn about 800 calories per hour, which is approximately twice **as many as they would burn walking**, although fewer than running, which would probably burn about 1,000 or more calories per hour. (2020 年高考)

Hunters did not fear deer and reindeers **as much as they did large game animals such as horses and mammoths.** (托福 TPO4)

▲ as long as

① 长达 (本义) ([2.3.1-9 比较状语从句](#))

长度: It is **as long as** the Nile and the Yangtze combined. (2018 年 6 月二卷)

时间: Her gaze returns; she looks at it for twice **as long as she did at the previous card.** (2013 年高考)

② 只要 (引申义) ([2.3.2 四种条件句](#))

I don't care who you are, where you're from, what you did, **as long as you love me.** – Backstreet Boy

▲ as well as

① 一样好 (本义) ([2.3.1-9 比较状语从句](#))



Other people say that you are illiterate if you think that you are illiterate. In other words, if you feel that you can't read or write as well as you would like to. (2017 年专四)

②也（引申义），整体近似并列连词 and

Attempts have been made to curb this tendency, for example, by trying to incorporate some measure of quality **as well as** quantity into the assessment of an applicant's papers. (2019 年考研)

▲ as soon as —...就... (☞ 2.3.1-1 时间状语从句)

As soon as I saw the location, I knew this was it. (2017 年 6 月四级三卷)

平级比较的否定

「as/so...as...」的否定为「not as/so...as...」。

He seemed unhappy with me unless I got straight A's and unhappy with my boyfriends if their fathers were **not as** "successful" as he was. (2008 年高考)

Although the earliest Sumerians engaged in commercial activity and practiced accounting, they were **not as** literate **as** people in other parts of the prehistoric world. (托福 TPO52)

The main evil of the present democratic institutions of the United States does not arise, as is often asserted in Europe, from their weakness, but from their overpowering strength; the excessive liberty which reigns in that country is **not so** alarming as is the very inadequate security which exists against tyranny. (GMAT)

2) 比较级和最高级

形容词和副词有比较级和最高级^①。

① 比较级 + than

比较级常与 than 连用, than 有介词和连词两种词性, 词义都表示「与...相比」。

① 如果 than 后接数量词+名词, 则 than 为介词, 「more/less than+数量词」整体视为限定词, 修饰名词 (☞ 4.1.1 限定词)。

More than 10 years ago, it was difficult to buy a tasty pineapple. (2008 年高考)

How many languages are spoken by **less than** 6,000 people at present? (2018 年高考)

如果 than 后接数量词+形容词, 则 than 为介词, 「more/less than+数量词」整体视为状语, 修饰形容词。

Haddad and Lewis are concerned that more than half the state-government boards are **less than** 40 percent female. (2020 年考研一)

^① 少数形容词属于不可等级形容词 (non-gradable adjective), 这类形容词及其对应副词没有比较级和最高级, 比如本身就有极端意义的 perfect、exhausted、freezing, 再比如某些物质形容词 sulphuric acid (硫酸)、the atomic nucleus (原子核)。



- ② 如果 than 后接句子，则 than 为连词，组成比较状语从句；如果后接名词性成分，则 than 为介词，组成介宾短语做比较状语。可见不论怎么分析，than 部分都是表示比较对象的状语，所以两种分析往往可以转化。

The new type of pineapple looked **more** yellowy-gold [**than** 介词 green]. (2008 年高考)
= The new type of pineapple looked **more** yellowy-gold **than** 连词 ()省略相同主谓 it looked green.

② not + 比较级 + than... VS no + 比较级 + than...

- ① 在多数情况下，「not + 比较级 + than...」与「no + 比较级 + than...」并无区别。not 和 no 都是副词，修饰后面的比较级（形容词或副词）。比如「A not more than B」 = 「A no more than B」 = 「A ≤ B」。

There are beautiful mountains **not/no more than** ten minutes' drive away. (Cambridge)
He was a kid really, **not/no more than** eighteen or nineteen. (Collins)

It is not surprising, therefore, that the highest ratio of oil and gas pools to volume of sediment is found in rock **no older than 2.5 million years** — young enough so that little of the petroleum has leaked away — and that nearly 60 percent of all oil and gas discovered so far has been found in strata that formed in the last 65 million years. (托福 TPO43)

You should write at least 150 words but **no more than** 200 words. (六级写作要求)

在数理逻辑中，「A ≤ B」表示 A 可以取小于等于 B 的任意值，但是在生活逻辑中，往往表示 A 取接近 B 的值，比如第一句表示「仅仅 10 分钟车程」，如果 A 取 5 分钟，原文就会用「not/no more than **five** minutes' drive away」。

但是在适当的语境中，「A ≤ B」也可以按照数理逻辑表示 A 可以取小于等于 B 的任意值，比如在上文最后一个例句中，「no more than 200 words」表示「不多于 200 单词」，而非要求考生一定要写到「仅仅 200 单词」。

- ② 但是在少数语境中，「A not + 比较级 + than B」含义不变，比如「A not more than B」 = 「A ≤ B」；但是「A no + 比较级 + than B」却否定 A 和 B 两个比较项，类似于「A as + 原级反义词 + as B」。一般是以「B 原级反义词」为已知事实，再评价 A 的情况与 B 一样。比如「no better than」 = 「as bad as」，「no earlier than」 = 「as late as」，「no higher than」 = 「as low as」。

They (the new devices) are **no better than** the old. (2018 年高考) 新设备和老设备一样糟。

One can **no more** trade without bills of exchange **than** sail without water. (托福 TPO10)
没有汇票就不能交易，就像没有水就不能航行一样。

Many new white-collar jobs offer **no more** autonomy or better prospects **than** old blue-collar ones. (2011 年专八) 许多白领工作和老式蓝领工作一样无法提供高自主度和好前景。

③ 比较级/最高级 + 范围



比较必然涉及范围，范围可以明示，也可以通过上下文暗示。

- ① 如果范围只包含两个或两类元素，则用比较级。

That's bad news for the environment — and our wallets — as these outdated devices consume much more energy than **the newer ones** that do the same things. (2018 年高考)

The decision to quit a senior position to look for a **better one** is unconventional. (2011 年考研一)

We don't do this for all texts, however, as **the shorter ones** do not seem to gain much from this process and it simply breaks up the reading pleasure. (2017 年专八)

- ② 如果范围包含三个/类或更多元素，则用最高级。

They need to immunise teams against group-think: Hackman argued that **the best ones** contain "deviants" who are willing to do something that may be upsetting to others. (2017 年 6 月四级二卷)

But it also gets to the heart of one of life's **greatest saddest truths**: that our most "memorable" occasions may elicit **the fewest memories**. (2010 年专四)

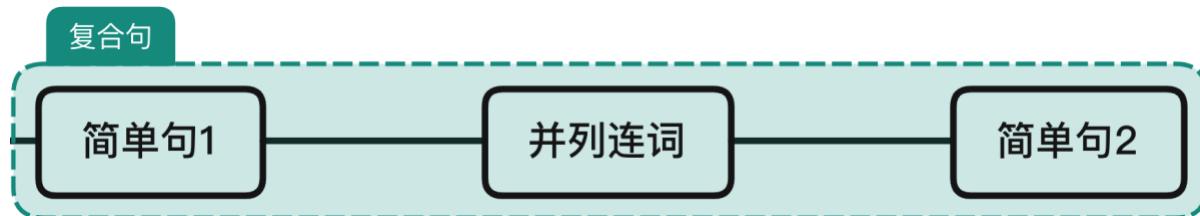
Indeed, in several cities **the wealthiest one percent** constantly increased its share until by 1850 it owned half of the community's wealth. (GRE)



第三章 复合句

3.1 复合句

复合句 (compound sentence) 即两个简单句用连词并列起来，其一般结构是：



复合句的引导词是并列连词 (coordinating conjunction)，简单句 1 和简单句 2 都是完整的句子，二者是并列的关系，所以复合句也称并列句。简单句 1 后可以加逗号，也可以不加。

如果将并列连词也视为一种引导词，可见复合句与复杂句的结构本质上是统一的，都是用一个引导词将两个简单句以某种方式连接起来，构成一个语义更丰富的句子。

在实际语言使用中，简单句 1 和简单句 2 可能并非简单句，内部可能包含其他从句，或者在复杂句内部包含复合句，此时整个句子称为复合复杂句 (compound-complex sentence)，但是分析方法一致。

3.1.1 fanboys 并列句

最简单的并列连词是 fanboys (for、and、nor、but、or、yet、so 的首字母缩写，还有 and yet、and so 两种组合形式)。其中 or 有「或者」和「否则」两种词义，nor 后接的简单句 2 要用部分倒装 ([7.2.2 部分倒装](#))。

并列连词	例句
for	<p>She locked the door, <u>for</u> she was afraid of burglars. (Oxford)</p> <p>The tradition of religious sculpture extends over most historical periods but is less clearly delineated than that of stonewares or porcelains, <u>for</u> it embraces the old custom of earthenware burial ceramics with later religious images and architectural ornament. (托福 TPO10)</p> <p>I had to keep the hand brake pressed down when travelling downhill, <u>for</u> unless it was held thus almost level with the floor it suddenly refused to function. (2015 年专八)</p>
and ^①	<p>Everybody uses a keyboard <u>and</u> everybody types differently. (2019 年高考)</p> <p>It takes sunscreen about fifteen minutes to start working, <u>and</u> that's plenty of time for your skin to absorb a day's worth of Vitamin D. (2019 年高考)</p> <p>Without this knowledge we can appreciate only the formal content of Egyptian art, <u>and</u> we will fail to understand why it was produced or the</p>

^① and 也可以表示转折/对比、选择等关系，视句子具体语义而定。



	<p><u>concepts that shaped it and caused it to adopt its distinctive forms.</u> (托福 TPO11)</p> <p>UW concedes that online courses may be more effective for self-directed learners, <u>and</u> students who are not organized and in possession of good time-management skills may struggle. (2015 年专八)</p>
nor	<p>It's not easy being a teenager, <u>nor</u> is it easy being the parent of a teenager. (2009 年高考)</p> <p>It didn't seem like heart failure, <u>nor</u> did it appear to be pneumonia. (2015 年专四)</p> <p>But mobility was not the dominant working-class strategy for coping with unemployment, <u>nor</u> was assistance from private charities or state agencies. (GMAT)</p>
but	<p>The honey guide does not actually like honey, <u>but</u> it does like the wax in the beehives. (2012 年高考)</p> <p>Coal from industry released large amounts of black soot into the environment, <u>but</u> the increase of the dark-colored forms was not due to <u>genetic mutations caused by industrial pollution.</u> (托福 TPO36)</p> <p>For example, smarter, better-organized hackers are making life tougher for the cyber-defenders, <u>but</u> even so a number of things can be done to keep everyone safer than they are now. (2016 年专八)</p>
or 或者	<p>Silences may be thoughtful, <u>or</u> they may be empty when a person has <u>nothing to say.</u> (2016 年高考)</p> <p>The time spent in the lake by a given molecule (if we could follow its fate) would depend on the route it took: it might flow through as part of the fastest, most direct current, <u>or</u> it might circle in a backwater for an indefinitely <u>long time.</u> (托福 TPO24)</p> <p>Particularly with first-time clients, an unconditional guarantee can be an effective marketing tool if the client is very cautious, the firm's fees are high, the negative consequences of bad service are grave, <u>or</u> business is difficult to obtain through referrals and word-of-mouth. (GMAT)</p>
or 否则	<p>Hurry up, <u>or</u> you'll be late. (Oxford)</p> <p>It can't have been serious, <u>or</u> she'd have called us. (Oxford)</p> <p>The benefits of play must outweigh costs, <u>or</u> play would not have evolved, according to Darwin's theory. (托福 TPO30)</p>
yet	<p>Computer programmer David Jones earns \$35,000 a year designing new computer games, <u>yet</u> he cannot find a bank ready to let him have a credit card. (2009 年高考)</p>



	<p>To twentieth-century eyes, Chinese pottery may appear merely decorative, <u>yet</u> to the Chinese the form of each object and its adornment had meaning and significance. (托福 TPO10)</p> <p>He had never exactly disliked the people in it, <u>yet</u> he had never liked them very much either. (2012 年专八)</p>
so	<p>The bedding industry says a bed should be six inches larger than the person using it, <u>so</u> even a king-size bed at 6' 6" (6 feet and 6 inches) is falling short for 25% of men. (2011 年高考)</p> <p>A structure built with steel beams protected by terra-cotta tiles was still three times lighter than a comparably sized building that used masonry construction, <u>so</u> the weight of the tiles was not a problem. (托福 TPO37)</p> <p>But the truth is, once you're off the beaten paths of the low-lying coastal areas where everyone lives, the roads are few, and they're all bad, <u>so</u> Iceland's natural wonders have been out of reach and unknown even to its own inhabitants. (2010 年专八)</p>
and yet ^①	<p>Earth had experienced previous periods of climatic change, <u>and</u> yet agriculture had not been developed. (托福 TPO21)</p> <p>It wasn't too long ago that the idea of working from anywhere and at anytime was some form of a distant utopian dream, <u>and</u> yet now we can perform almost any office-based task from any location in the world as long as we have access to the internet. (2017 年 12 月六级二卷)</p> <p>The ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle implied that such contradictions are virtually essential to the tragic personality, <u>and</u> yet critics keep coming back to this element of inconsistency as though it were an eccentric feature of Webster's own tragic vision. (LSAT)</p>
and so	<p>The end result is that we feel like we can't focus or that we're focused on the wrong things, <u>and</u> so we take less action, make less progress, and stay the same when we could be improving. (2014 年高考)</p> <p>We also know that the global climate system is immensely complicated and that everything is in some way connected, <u>and</u> so the system is capable of fluctuating in unexpected ways. (托福 TPO12)</p> <p>In the course of time new species would continue to evolve, <u>and</u> so the rate of speciation would be greater than the rate of extinction, resulting in the accumulation of great diversity. (LSAT)</p>

^① 注意 and so、and yet 中的 so 和 yet 是副词，在从句部分「and so/yet + 简单句 2」中做状语表示前后句的逻辑关系，并非两个连词合用。同理，and therefore、and thus 中的 therefore 和 thus 也是副词，在「and therefore/thus + 简单句 2」中，therefore 和 thus 是副词做状语，表示前后句的逻辑关系。



3.1.2 其他并列句 ☆☆

引导复合句的连词并不限于 fanboys，其他连词也能连接两个简单句形成复合句。

连词	例句
only 只是	<p>He is still a young man, <u>only</u> he seems older because of his careworn expression. (Oxford)</p> <p>It's just as dramatic as a movie, <u>only</u> it's real. (Collins)</p> <p>I'd introduce you to her, <u>only</u> you'd win her. — <i>Martin Eden</i> by Jackson London</p>
either...or... ^①	<p>Put the gun down — <u>it's either that or I'll call the police.</u> (Oxford)</p> <p>If you factor in the projected rates of technological change, <u>either</u> your skills will become unnecessary, <u>or</u> your industry outdated. (2019 年 6 月四级一卷)</p> <p>Most often, these plants <u>either</u> contain a gene making them resistant to the herbicide glyphosate <u>or</u> they contain an insect-resistant gene that produces a protein called Bt toxin. (托福 TPO38)</p>
neither...nor... ^②	<p>Neither did you do it, nor did I (do it)<small>可承前省略</small>. </p> <p>Neither has he called on her, <u>nor will he do so.</u> </p> <p>He neither likes fiction, <u>nor does he like poetry.</u> </p>
not only... but also... ^③	<p>Honey from the African forest is not only a kind of natural sugar, <u>it is also delicious.</u> (2012 年高考)</p> <p>Not only was a monopoly of cinnamon becoming impossible, <u>but the spice trade overall was diminishing in economic potential</u>, and was eventually superseded by the rise of trade in coffee, tea, chocolate, and sugar. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>As the rituals of purchase in the lead-up to Christmas change, not only do we give less thought to the type of gifts we buy for our loved ones <u>but</u>, through our own digital wish lists, <u>we increasingly control what they buy for us.</u> (2015 年专八)</p>

^① 譬如 **1** either...or... **2** neither...nor... **3** whether...or... **4** both...and... **5** not only...but also...等连词被称为关联连词 (correlative conjunctions)，其中 **1** **2** **5** 可以引导复合句，但是 **1** **2** 引导的复合句难以区分主句和从句，可以视为从句一般结构的例外。

^② neither...nor...往往可以在后半句中承前省略，所以 neither...nor...连接词组而非句子 ([3.2 并列结构](#))。

^③ not only...but also...的用法比较复杂，首先 not only 可以用于句中，也可以用于句首接倒装句 ([7.2.2 部分倒装](#))；but also 可以省略其中一个，也可以两个词都用——如果两个词都用，可以紧挨着使用，也可以拆开使用。



3.1.3 复合句注意事项

1) 常见伪连词

连接副词 (conjunctive adverb) 常用于表示前后句语义上的逻辑关系，但是在词性上它们并非连词，所以在语法上不具备连接两个简单句形成复合句的功能。这样易混为连词的连接副词在此处被称为「伪连词」，包括 therefore、however、moreover、furthermore、nonetheless、nevertheless、then、thus 等。以 therefore 为例，错误用法和正确用法是：

✗ 简单句 1, therefore, 简单句 2.

✓ 简单句 1. Therefore, 简单句 2.

Many Native Americans value silence and feel it is a basic part of communicating among people, just as some traditional Chinese and Thai persons do. **Therefore**, when a person from one of these cultures is speaking and suddenly stops, what maybe implied is that the person wants the listener to consider what has been said before continuing. (2016 年高考)

✓ 简单句 1; therefore, 简单句 2.

The average man is heavier than the average woman; **therefore**, men generally need to gain more weight than women do before they are considered obese. (GMAT)

✓ 简单句 1. 简单句 2 的一部分, therefore, 简单句 2 的剩余部分.

An approaching body produces one kind of emotional line, a receding or departing body another; the meeting of two forces produces visual, kinesthetic, and emotional effects, with a world of suggestibility around them like a penumbra that evokes many ideas and emotions whenever these forms are manipulated. Basic human gesture assume, **therefore**, an almost mystic power. (SAT)

2) 复合句 vs 状语从句

复合句与大多数状语从句的结构相同，都是「简单句 1 + 连词 + 简单句 2 (完整句子)」，也很难判断「连词 + 简单句 2」是否做「简单句 1」的状语，而且语义上又往往表示同样的句意，所以二者往往难以区分，不同的语法书往往观点不同。

从实际语言使用来说，可以不做区分，只要具体的句子语义通顺、语法正确即可。但是如果确有区分的必要，可以从「状语一般可以移动」的属性考虑。

① 如果「连词 + 简单句 2」置于「简单句 1」前后均成立，则为状语从句。

✓ Although the sun was shining, it wasn't very warm.

✓ It wasn't very warm, although the sun was shining.

② 如果「连词 + 简单句 2」置于「简单句 1」之后成立，置于之前则不成立，则为复合句。

✓ I like action movies, but she doesn't like them.

✗ But she doesn't like them, I like action movies.



3.2 并列结构

连词除了可以连接句子，也可以连接词/词组。连词连接的项目在语法上必须是同级别的，要么都是词/词组，要么都是句子，否则视为语法错误；而且在语义上必须表示同类事物，否则语义不通。句子并列，形成上文所述的复合句；词/词组并列，视为语法成分并列。并列连词连接词/词组，使被连接项形成某种逻辑关系，包括并列关系、选择关系和转折关系。

1) 表并列关系

连词	例子
and	<p>ham and eggs (Oxford)</p> <p>She <u>shouted</u> and <u>screamed</u>. (Oxford)</p> <p>She goes swimming in the sea <u>summer</u> and <u>winter</u>. (Oxford)</p>
both...and...	<p>The honey guide gives a loud cry that attracts the attention of both <u>passing animals</u> and <u>people</u>. (2012 年高考)</p> <p>On both <u>Mars</u> and <u>Venus</u>, carbon dioxide is by far the most abundant gas in the atmosphere. (托福 TPO61)</p> <p>Both <u>Greeley</u> and <u>Bennett</u> had served long, humiliating and disappointing apprenticeships in the newspaper business. (2019 年专八)</p>
not only... but also...	<p>When people live longer, they are not only <u>older for longer</u>, but also <u>younger for longer</u>. (2019 年 6 月四级一卷)</p> <p>We suggest that humour is not only <u>enjoyable</u> but more importantly, <u>energizing</u>. (剑桥雅思 15)</p> <p>The kinds of moneys and rewards potentially available from excelling on the international stage has served to incentivise not only professionalisation, but also corruption and cheating. (2010 年专八)</p>
neither/ not... nor...	<p>There will probably be months of legal tussling, and it is not at all clear which side will prevail <u>in court</u>, nor <u>in the battle for public opinion and legislative favor</u>. (2017 年 12 月六级三卷)</p> <p>Neither <u>children</u> nor <u>adults</u> could resist the temptation of a free toy. (2016 年 12 月四级三卷)</p> <p>This accords with anecdotal evidence that people often yawn in situations where they are neither <u>tired</u> nor <u>bored</u>, but are preparing for impending mental and physical activity. (托福 TPO18)</p>

2) 表选择关系

连词	例子
or	If Apple is forced to open up an iPhone for an American law enforcement investigation, what is to prevent it from doing so for a request from <u>the Chinese</u> or <u>the Iranians</u> ? (2017 年 12 月六级三卷)



	<p>The tendency of thinkers such as J. B. Watson, the founder of behaviourism, was that human beings could be <u>shaped</u>, or manipulated, by policymakers and managers. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>Many multilinguals report <u>different personalities</u>, or even different worldviews, when they speak their different languages. (2018 年专八)</p>
either...or...	<p>When printing was invented in the fifteenth century, pages of advertisements (ads) could be printed easily and were <u>either hung in public places</u> or put in books. (2011 年高考)</p> <p>The world, according to Anaximenes, was not composed of either water or apeiron, but air itself was the fundamental element of the universe. (托福 TPO37)</p> <p>Although recent research has allowed us to stabilize the tissue-biomaterial interface by controlling <u>either the chemical reactions</u> or the microstructure of the biomaterial, our fundamental understanding of how implant devices adhere to tissues remains woefully incomplete. (GRE)</p>
whether...or...	<p>Whether we've been <u>stolen from</u>, <u>lied to</u>, <u>misled</u>, or cheated on, there are different levels of losing trust. (2015 年高考)</p> <p>The participants weren't told beforehand whether the tunes were composed by <u>humans</u> or computers, but were asked to guess, and then rate how much they liked each one. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>Whether that's primarily of <u>the disease for which it is raising funds</u> or the speed at which images of swimsuit-clad celebrities will go viral is a long-term question. (2016 年专八)</p>

3) 表转折关系

连词	例子
but not...but...	<p>It's not <u>an asset</u> but a disadvantage. (Oxford)</p> <p>According to the journal Australian Manufacturer, the attitude of many employers and fellow workers is <u>anything</u> but friendly. (2018 年专八)</p> <p>Astronomers suggest that stars like IRC+10216 are actually "protoplanetary nebulae" — old giant stars whose dense cores have <u>almost</u> but not quite rid themselves of the fluffy envelopes of gas around them. (GRE)</p>
yet	<p>The language is almost intoxicating, an aging writer looking back on an ambitious yet simpler time. (2020 年高考)</p>



Pine was especially attractive for building purposes. It is durable and strong, **yet** soft enough to be easily worked with even the simplest of hand tools. (托福 TPO54)

Seventeenth-century scientists were far more dependent on their laboratory technicians than are scientists today, **yet** far less willing to acknowledge technicians' scientific contributions. (LSAT)



第四章 主语

英语句子由主语和谓语两个部分构成。

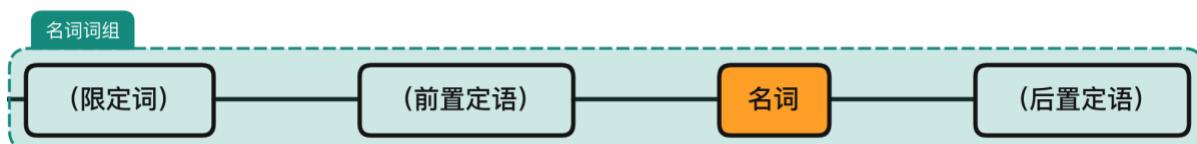


主语是动作的发出者或存在的主体，能够做主语的结构包括：

可能构成	例句
名词/名词词组	Physics is a branch of science. (Oxford) The exorbitant prices are explainable in light of the facts. (Oxford)
主格代词	They cut the water off. (Oxford) It's raining. (Oxford)
非谓语动词	☞ 1.1.3 非谓语动词做名词性成分
名词性从句	☞ 2.1 名词性从句
名词化结构	" To improve standards " is the key phrase here. (Oxford) Two times three is six. (Oxford) Definitive is a dangerous word in criticism. (<i>The New York Times</i>)

4.1 名词词组

名词词组的一般结构是^①：



在名词词组中，除了核心名词外，限定词、前置定语、后置定语都是非必须部分^②。

名词/名词词组的典型用法是做名词性成分（主语、宾语、补语、同位语），但是也能做定语、状语、补语等成分，所以可以笼统说名词能做除谓语动词之外的所有语法成分。

语法成分/功能	例句
主语	The garden is planted with herbs. (Oxford)
宾语 动词宾语	She uses her maiden name . (Oxford)

^① 名词词组的一般结构存在例外，但是这些例外可以视为一般结构的某种变形。

^② 1 the + 形容词 = the + 形容词 + 名词，比如 the old = the old people 地球、the good = the good thing(s) 地球

^② 2 the + 分词 = the + 分词 + 名词，比如 the unemployed = the unemployed people 地球，the living = the living people 地球

^② 如果引入零冠词 (zero article) 的概念，也可以说限定词是核心成分，比如 China = 零冠词 + China 名词。



	介词宾语	They live far from civilization . (Oxford)
补语	表语	That was the worst thing you could have done. (Oxford)
	宾语补语	We'll make London our base . (Oxford)
	其他补语 ^①	He left home a mere child and returned an old man .
	同位语	the first US president, George Washington (Oxford)
	定语	to upset the apple cart (Oxford)
	状语	I play tennis three times a week . (Oxford)
	引导词 ^②	The moment I saw you, I fell in love with you.

4.1.1 限定词

限定词 (determiner) 不是一种词性，而是一个语法概念，指对核心名词起特指、类指以及表示确定数量和非确定数量等限定作用的词/词组。但是由于使用频繁，许多词典已将「限定词」与其他词性并列。

限定词	例子
冠词	不定冠词 a/an、定冠词 the
名词所有格	one's、John's
代词	形容词性物主代词 my、your、his、her、our、your、their、its
	指示代词 this、that、these、those、such
	(部分)疑问代词 what、which、whose
	不定代词 no、some、any、each、every、either、neither、all、both、half、several、many、much、(a) few、(a) little、other、another
数量词	基数词 one、two、three...
	序数词 first、second、third...
	倍数词 twice、two times、three times...
	分数词 one third、one in five、two out of ten、59% 等
	其他 a lot of、lots of、plenty of、a great deal of、a large amount of、a good number of 等

1) 限定词的前中后位 ☆☆☆

名词词组中可能同时出现多个限定词，需要一定的规则对这些限定词进行排序。限定词分为前、中、后三种位置。

限定词	例子
-----	----

^① 补语的概念存在争议 ([6.2.2 补语](#))。

^② 名词词组语做引导词存在争议 ([2.3.1-1 时间状语从句](#))。



前位	(部分)指示代词	such ^①
	(部分)不定代词	all、 both、 half
	倍数词	twice、 two times、 three times...
	分数词	one third、 one in five、 two out of ten、 59%等
	(部分)疑问代词	what、 which、 whose
中位	冠词	a、 an、 the
	(部分)指示代词	this、 that、 these、 those
	形容词性物主代词	my、 your、 his、 her、 our、 your、 their、 its
	名词所有格	one's、 John's
	(部分)不定代词	some、 any、 no、 every、 each、 either、 neither、 enough
	(部分)疑问代词	what、 which、 whose
后位	基数词	one、 two、 three...
	序数词	first、 second、 third...
	(部分)不定代词	next、 last、 other、 another、 many、 much、 a few、 few、 a little、 little、 fewer、 fewest、 less、 least、 more、 most、 several、 such

限定词的用法规则是：在一个名词词组中，前位限定词和中位限定词最多用一个，后位限定词可以用多个，可以用公式表示为：**前位限定词 0/1 + 中位限定词 0/1 + 后位限定词 0-n**。

half 前 his 中 lecture

all 前 other 后 students

all 前 the 中 four 后 teachers

all 前 these 中 last 后 few 后 days

some 中 such 后 alloy

these 中 last 后 few 后 days

2) 冠词的用法

冠词 (article) 是最常用的限定词，其基本使用原则是：泛指用不定冠词 a/an，特指用定冠词 the。特指包括三种情况，极少数情况下 the 也可表示泛指，其他情况用 a/an 或名词复数。

特指	前文提及	A typical lion tamer in people's mind is an entertainer holding a whip and a chair. The whip gets all of the attention, but it's mostly for show. (2014 年高考)
	后文限定	The day (of justice) 介宾短语-后置定语 will come.

The day will come (when justice is done) 定语从句.
The day will come. Justice will be done by then.

^① such 既然可以做前位限定词，也可以做后位限定词。



		The woman had persuaded him to do the one thing (he was hired never to do) — reveal the combination for the lock on the entrance. (2019 年专四)
	语境限定	Where's the Book? (特指《圣经》) Where is the car key? (对话双方都知道指的是哪把车钥匙。) The earth orbits around the sun. (独一无二的事物)
泛指	the + 形容词/分词 /单数名词	play the piano/ guitar/ violin (西洋乐器前加 the) The Chinese are often very hospitable.

4.1.2 定语

定语 (attribute) 修饰名词或代词，可前置或后置，多种结构都可做定语。

定语	位置	例子
形容词	前置	a few big firms (2020 年考研) generous support (2017 年高考) monetary reward (2020 年考研)
	后置	something old , something new , something borrowed and something blue —西方结婚习俗 something universal (GRE)
名词 ^②	前置	apple tree、 trade war a rescue and education organization (2017 年高考) law enforcement officials (2017 年 12 月六级三卷)
介宾短语	后置	a <u>town of culture award</u> (2020 年考研) Although <u>origin in ritual</u> has long been the most popular, it is by no means the only theory about how the theater came into being. (托福 TPO1)
非谓语动词	前置	1.1.2 非谓语动词做定语
	后置	

^① 这个例句要视语境判断，如有特定语境，the tiger 也可以特指某一只老虎。

^② 名词做前置定语，也可视这两个名词为一个整体。



定语从句	后置	2.2 定语从句
形容词化结构	前置	a UK "town of culture" award (2020 年考研) the post-Brexit world (2020 年考研) We've always been a hands-on, do-it-yourself kind of nation. (2019 年 6 月月四级三卷)

多个形容词做定语的顺序 ☆☆

多个形容词做前置定语时，一般顺序是 **OPSHACOM**，可以以「a beautiful new black Italian leather jacket」辅助记忆。

首字母	涵义	例子
OP	opinion 评价	beautiful、wonderful、expensive、terrible、horrible、lovely
SH	size/shape 外观	long、short、round、square
A	age 新旧	new、old
C	color 颜色	red、blue
O	origin 产地	Chinese、Italian、American
M	material 材质	leather、glass、rubber、metal

4.1.3 名词

名词 (noun) 原意是给事物命名的词 (专有名词 proper noun)，但是除了事物名称还有很多其他指代事物及抽象概念的词 (普通名词 common noun)。从是否可以数个数，名词又分为不可数名词 (uncountable noun) 和可数名词 (countable noun) [附录一 名词复数表](#)。

普 通 名 词	个体名词	可 数	个体人/事物	a man、two men an apples、two apples
	集体名词		一类生物 (有生命)	a family、two families a couple、two couples
	物质名词	不 可 数	一类事物 (无生命)	furniture、machinery、poetry
	抽象名词		各类物质	water、wine、hydrogen、glass、oil、ice
	专有名词		抽象概念	craftsmanship、integrity、beauty、hope
			人名、地名、机构名	Donald J. Trump、New York、WTO、G20

名词的可数与不可数 ☆☆☆

名词的可数与不可数并非一成不变，很多名词兼具可数与不可数两性，甚至不少名词的可数与不可数可以在具体语境中转化。

① 很多名词兼具可数与不可数的性质，表示具体含义时可数，表示抽象含义时不可数。

There are merely three **rooms** in this apartment. (房间，可数)

There is plenty of **room** for the three of us in this apartment. (空间，不可数)

Shanghai has **an area** of over 6000 square kilometers. (具体的面积，可数)



Shanghai is the largest city in **area** in China. (抽象的面积, 不可数)

Education is vital for a country's development. (抽象意义上的教育, 不可数)

She had a college **education**. (具体的一段教育经历, 可数)

② 一般不可数的名词可以具体化为可数名词。

Many people agree that a **knowledge** of English is a must in international trade today.

(1996 年高考)

Could you grab me a **water**? (口语体, 相当于 a cup/bottle of water)

A **heavy snow** has paralyzed the transportation system. (一场大雪)

③ 一般可数的名词也可以概念化为不可数名词。

Family goes first. (环球)

to have too little **ear** (听不见意见)

I now pronounce this couple **husband and wife**. (环球)

We are **boyfriend and girlfriend**. (环球)

Business is not that easy. It's **dog eat dog**. (表示「残酷竞争」, 而非「狗咬狗」)

4.2 代词

代词 (pronoun) 原意即代替名词的词, 实际上的作用不止于代替名词。代词属于封闭词类, 英语中的代词完全列举如下。

人称代词	主格	I、you、he、she、it、we、they
	宾格	me、you、him、her、it、us、them
物主代词	形容词性	my、your、his、her、its、our、their
	名词性	mine、yours、his、hers、its、ours、theirs
指示代词	this、that、these、those	
反身代词	myself、ourselves、yourself、yourselves、himself、herself、itself、oneself、themselves	
不定代词	some、something、somebody、somebody's、someone、someone's any、anything、anybody、anybody's、anyone、anyone's nothing、nobody、nobody's、no one、no ones's everything、everybody、everybody's、everyone ^① 、everyone's all、each ^② 、both、much、many、(a) little、(a) few、other(s)、another、 none、one、ones、one's、either、neither	

^① everyone、everybody 对应的形容词性物主代词可以用 his/her, 也可以用 their。

正式文体: Everyone was clapping **his/her** hands. (环球)

非正式文体: Everyone was clapping **their** hands. (环球)

^② each 有多种词性。

代词: **Each** despises the other. (环球)

形容词: **each** morning、**each** and every day (环球)

副词: I gave them a book **each**. Now they **each** have a book. (环球)



疑问代词	what、which、who、whom、whose、whatever、whichever、whoever、whomever、whosever
连接代词^①	
关系代词	that、which、who、whom、whose、as ^②
相互代词	each other、one another、each other's、one another's

代词能做限定词和名词性成分（主语、宾语、补语、同位语）。

语法成分	例句
限定词	<p>Our dependable minibus was waiting to load the luggage and take us to the hotel where everyone went <u>their</u> separate ways. (2009 年高考)</p> <p>We all grew up hearing people tell us to "go out and get <u>some</u> fresh air". (2019 年高考)</p> <p>"Laws allowing <u>these</u> animals to be brought in from deep forest areas without stricter control need changing," says Peter Schantz. (2009 年高考)</p>
主语	<p>You will make mistakes, time and time again. (2020 年高考)</p> <p>This could be the beginning of a lifetime of mountain climbing adventure. (2008 年高考)</p> <p>Nothing is too small to celebrate. (2020 年高考)</p>
宾语	<p>My mom <u>told me</u> how to preparing it. (2020 年高考)</p> <p>The flight was overbooked, and Delta, the airline, <u>offered us</u> \$400 per person in credits to give up our seats and leave the next day. (2013 年高考)</p> <p>Whaley recalls how at the beginning of the year, when called upon to read, Chris <u>would excuse himself</u> to go to the bathroom. (2019 年高考)</p>
	<p>He wants these kids to learn to boast <u>about themselves</u>. (2019 年高考)</p> <p>When the world was still populated by hunter-gatherers, small, tightly knit groups developed their own patterns of speech independent <u>of each other</u>. (2018 年高考)</p> <p>Sometimes when kids are stressed and upset they take it out <u>on themselves</u>. (2012 年高考)</p>
补语	It's me .
	What makes me " me "?
同位语	That man, him , stole my wallet.

^① 连接代词实际上就是疑问代词用于连接从句。

^② as 是否可以视为关系代词具有争议。



4.3 主谓一致

4.3.1 主谓一致基本原则

主谓一致 (subject-predicate agreement/concord) 即谓语动词在人称和数上要与主语保持一致。其基本原则为语法一致 (grammatical agreement)，即只看主语的形式决定谓语动词的数。最常见做主语的名词/名词词组和代词的语法一致见下表 (谓语动词以 be 动词一般现在时为例)。

名词/名词词组	不可数名词	water、China、education	is
	可数名词单数	a boy、an idea	is
	可数名词复数	two boys、many ideas	are
主格代词	第一人称单数	I	am
	第二人称单数/复数	you	are
	第三人称单数	he、she、it	is
	复数	we、they	are

意义一致 (notional agreement) 和就近一致 (principle of proximity) 可以视为语法一致的例外。

① 意义一致即不看语法形式，而看意义上的单复数决定谓语动词的单复数。 ([4.3.2 主谓一致实例](#))。

Police have found what appears to be the lost ancient statue. (2013 年高考)

Ten miles seems like a long walk to me. (2013 年专四)

Bread and butter is a good breakfast.

② 就近一致即以最靠近谓语动词的名词的单复数决定谓语动词的单复数。常见于并列结构 ([4.3.2-3 并列结构的主谓一致](#))。

Either my brothers or my father is going to do this.

Neither she nor I am going.

Only one out of five were present at the meeting. (2015 年专四)

There is a separate bedroom, a modern kitchen with a refrigerator. (2017 年高考)

4.3.2 主谓一致实例 ☆☆☆

1) 形似复数名词的主谓一致

很多以-s 结尾的名词形似名词复数，但是未必是复数，总结如下。

主语	谓语	例子
疾病名称	单数	anaphylaxis、appendicitis、asbestosis、arthritis、bronchitis、cholecystitis、colitis、diabetes、pancreatitis、phlebitis、psoriasis、measles、mumps、sepsis、spondylitis、rhinitis、rickets、vaginosis



游戏名称		单数	billiards、charades、checkers、craps、darts、dominoes、marbles ^{①②}
地理名称	单一实体	单数	the United States、the United Nations、the Netherlands
	地名	复数	the Berkeley Islands、the Bahamas、the Himalayas、the Niagara Falls、Penghu Islands、the Straits of Gibraltar、the Tasmania Islands、the West Indies、
学科名称		单数	acoustics、athletics、economics、linguistics、mathematics、mechanics、optics、physics、politics、statistics、tactics ^③
两部分构成物体名称		复数	binoculars、goggles、jeans、knickers、pants、panties、pincers、pliers、pyjamas、glasses、scissors、shorts、spectacles、suspenders、tights、trousers
多部分构成物体名称		复数	archives、arms、clothes、contents、eaves、fireworks、goods、minutes、morals、remains、stairs、suburbs、thanks、wages ^④
ings 结尾名词		复数	belongings、clippings、diggings、earnings、filings、lodgings、renderings、surroundings、sufferings、sweepings、veneerings、wanderings
单复同形名词	意义一致		barracks、headquarters、means、series、species、works (附录一 2-1 单复同形)

2) 集合名词的主谓一致

常作复数 (有生命)	police、people、cattle、militia、poultry、vermin
常作单数 (无生命)	foliage、machinery、equipment、furniture、merchandise
单复均可	视作整体用单数；侧重个体成员用复数 audience、committee、class、crew、family、government、public

3) 并列结构的主谓一致

语法一致	both...and...、many a 等
	Both the rise of the Internet and reduced appetite for literary fiction contribute to people' s declining curiosity. (2017 年 12 月四级三卷)

^① 部分游戏名称用复数，比如 Cards (纸牌游戏) are forbidden in our school.

^② 表示游戏名称时视为单数，但是表示具体的物品时视为复数，比如 a domino 一张多米诺骨牌。

^③ 这些名词表示其他意义，可能用复数。

These German-made **acoustics** (原声吉他) are exceptional value and a pleasure to play. (Oxford)

The **economics** (经济意义) of the project are very doubtful. (Collins)

Basic infantry **tactics** (策略) were taught by guest instructors. (Oxford)

^④ 少数这类名词，单复数均可用，比如 His **whereabouts** is/are still unknown. (Oxford)



	Many a good man has been destroyed by booze. (Oxford)
意义一致	A toasted sandwich and eggs makes a good breakfast.
	Every boy and every girl in this country is entitled to an education.
	Your fairness and impartiality has/ have been highly regarded.
	What I think and say bear anyone present here.
	Good and bad taste are consolidated by habits.
就近一致	or、nor、either...or...、neither...nor...、not only...but also...等 My sisters or my brother is likely to help you with this. Either her father or her mother drives her to school. Neither the players nor the coach was confident before the tournament. Not only the scene but also other evidence has been sabotaged.
主语决定	主语 + as much as、rather than、more than、no less than、as well as、in addition to、with、along with、together with、except 等结构 No one [except two girls] 状语 was late for class. Some of the workers [as much as the manager] 状语 were responsible for the accident.

4) 数量词+名词做主语的主谓一致

主语	谓语动词	例子
单数量词	单数	a committee of、a pair of、a panel of、a board of、a portion of、a series of、a pile of、a kind of、a type of、a sort of 等
复数量词	复数	these kinds of/ many kinds of/ several kinds of 等
确定数量词	意义一致	<u>Six months</u> is too short a time for learning a new language. There are six gold coins in each of the stockings.
不确定量词	名词决定	all of/ some of/ none of/ half of/ most of/ lots of/ heaps of/ loads of/ plenty of 等 <u>Most of his money</u> was squandered on luxuries. <u>Most of the senators</u> were present here for his last speech.
	意义一致	an average of/ a majority of...等 <u>An average of 25 persons</u> apply each month. <u>An average of 25 applicants</u> a month is not unusual.
	单数	many a/ more than one...等 <u>Many a good man</u> has been destroyed by booze. (Oxford) <u>More than one game</u> was lost.
分数/百分数	名词决定	<u>Over six percent of the city</u> was destroyed in the war. <u>30% of the doctors</u> are women.
之一	单数 就近一致	one in/out of... 正式文体用单数，非正式文体可用就近一致 <u>One in ten students</u> has/ have failed.



		意义一致	one of + 复数名词 + 从句 <u>Frank is one of those people</u> who are willing to help people. Tom is one of those rare people who believes in vampires.
		单数	出现 the 或 the only Hubris is the only one of his many faults which defeats him.
四 则 运 算	相减 相除	单数	Ten minus seven leaves three. (Oxford) 36 divided by 2 equals 18. (Oxford)
	相加 相乘	单数皆可	Two plus four is/are six. (Oxford) Two times three is/are six. (Oxford)

5) 非谓语动词、分句做主语的主谓一致

主语	谓语	例子
非谓语动词 ☞ 1.1.3-1	单数	To err is human. —Alexander Pope Unfortunately, <u>computing</u> was not part of our studies at school. (2009 年高考)
名词性从句 ☞ 2.1.1-1 ☞ 2.1.2	意义一致	That people often experience trouble sleeping in a different bed in unfamiliar surroundings is a phenomenon known as the "first-night" effect. (2017 年 12 月四级一卷) Whether food is contaminated depends much on the number of bacteria that get onto it. (2018 年 12 月四级三卷) What caused the accident and who was responsible for it remain a complete mystery. What was real to him were the memories with her. What are often regarded as poisonous fungi are in fact edible.



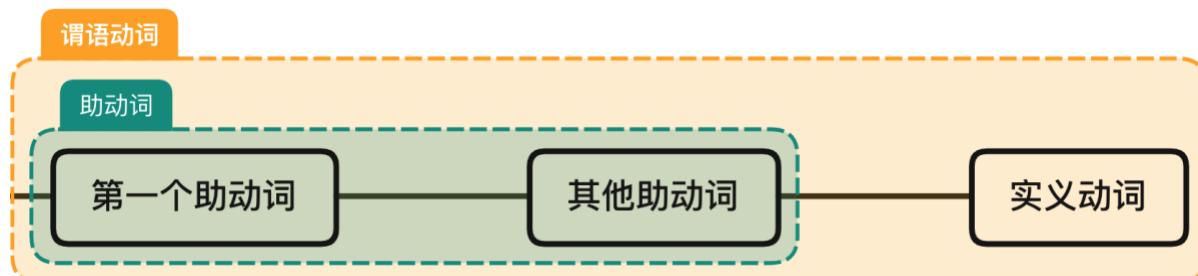
第五章 谓语

英语句子由主语和谓语两个部分构成，广义的谓语包含谓语动词和其他部分（宾语、补语等）。一般说的谓语，可能指广义的谓语，也可能指狭义的谓语动词，需要根据语境辨别。



5.1 谓语动词

谓语动词即一般说的谓语（狭义），一般结构是：



5.1.1 助动词

助动词 (auxiliary verb) 即协助实义动词传达意义的辅助性动词。谓语动词内部可能包含多个助动词，可以分为第一个助动词和其他助动词，这与时态、否定句、疑问句、倒装句的构成等紧密相关。助动词属于封闭词类，包括基本助动词、情态动词和半助动词。

1) 基本助动词

基本助动词 (primary auxiliary verb) 只有 be、do、have 等 3 个，其变形及用法如下。这三个词都可以做实义动词，注意区分 ([8.1.4 be 的用法](#)、[8.1.5 have 的用法](#))。

基本助动词	用法	例句
be	am	I do this and am astonished that 58 percent said they had never dome so. (2013 年高考)
	is	The Stroudwater Canal is moving towards reopening. (2015 年高考)
	are	Here they are learning to get in touch with their true feelings. (2015 年高考)
	was	The child was found by the search party. (Oxford)
	were	My kids and I were heading into the supermarket over the weekend. (2015 年高考)
do	do	Do newborns simply prefer more to fewer? (2013 年高考)
	does	What does the author think of the tour? (2009 年高考)



	did		Why did David decide to leave school and start working? (2009 年高考)
have	have		I've never been to Greece. (Oxford)
	has	完成时态	She has lost her bag. (Oxford)
	had	完成进行时态	But I had been studying it in books and magazines for four years in my spare time. (2009 年高考)

2) 情态动词

情态动词 (modal verb) 即表示能力、许可、意志、义务等情态意义 (modality) 的一类助动词。情态动词的特点是无人称变形，用法是后接动词原形。情态动词的具体范围有争议，严格意义上的情态动词只有 9 个，除 must 外，其余 8 个可分为一般形式和过去形式，过去形式常用于虚拟语气 ([5.4.3 虚拟语气](#))。

一般形式	过去形式 ^①
can	could
may	might
will	would
shall	should
must	

情态动词表可能性

部分情态动词除了表示情态意义，还表示可能性。过去形式往往比一般形式可能性更低。注意部分情况下，情态意义与表示可能性会混杂在一起，比如 will、would 在表示将来/过去将来的
情态意义时可以同时表示可能性。

情态动词	中文翻译	可能性估值	例句
can	可能	60%	It can happen. (Oxford)
cannot/can't	不可能	0%	You can't be serious, Mrs Lorimer? (Collins)
could	可能	50%	He was jailed five years ago and could be released next year. (Collins)
couldn't	不可能	0%	Anne couldn't be expected to understand the situation.
may	也许	40%	We may have some rain today. (Collins)
might	也许	30%	The two countries might go to war. (Collins)

^① 情态动词的过去形式并不一定表示过去时间，也可以表示委婉的语气。

Could I use the phone? (Oxford)

Would you like to join me for a quick lunch before class? (2008 年高考)



will	会	90%	The public is undecided about whether women will make good leaders. (2019年6月四级二卷)
would	会	80%	He'll need to be jamming you at this point, as a broken window or opened door would normally release the alarm. (2016年12月四级一卷)
must	肯定	100%	At 29, Russell must be one of the youngest-ever Wembley referees. (Collins)

3) 半助动词 ★★★

除了严格意义上的情态动词，部分符合情态动词特征的词被称为半情态动词（semi-modal verb）。

① dare

表示「敢于」时，既可以视为情态动词（后接动词原形），也可以视为实义动词（后接不定式）。^①

	情态动词	实义动词
肯定句	I dare <u>say</u> you've heard about her. (Oxford)	No nineteenth-century woman dared <u>to describe</u> childbirth, much less her sexual passion. (GMAT)
否定句	She daren't <u>leave</u> the baby alone. (Oxford)	Since he was stuck in a lift a year ago he hasn't dared <u>to get back</u> into one. (Collins)
一般疑问句	Dare she <u>risk</u> staying where she was? (Collins)	Does he dare <u>to meddle</u> with the laws of nature?
特殊疑问句	How dare you <u>speak</u> to me like that! (2012年专四)	How does she dare <u>to talk</u> to me like that?

dare 做情态动词常用于以下常用用法。

Don't you dare ever speak to me like that again! (Oxford)

Most people will agree that language and culture are inextricably connected. But does a "native English speaker culture" exist? **I dare say** it doesn't. (2011年专八)

^① 另外，dare 还可以做名词或及物动词，表示「激将」。

She ran across a main road for a **dare**. (Oxford)

Students **are being dared** to draw a picture, write an article, take a photo or write a poem that shows what they are curious about. (2014年高考)



It's a simple term that encapsulates the fact that relationships at work can reasonably be non-intimate, inconsequential, unimportant and even, **dare I say it**, disposable or substitutable. (2019年6月六级三卷)

2 need

表示「需要/必须」时，既可以视为情态动词（后接动词原形），也可以视为实义动词（后接不定式或名词）。^①

	情态动词	实义动词
肯定句	All you need <u>bring</u> are sheets. (Oxford)	All you need <u>to do</u> is to complete this form. (Oxford)
否定句	It needn't <u>be</u> the case. (Oxford)	Admission is at normal charges and you don't need <u>to book</u> . (2015年高考)
一般疑问句	Need he <u>reply</u> ? (Oxford)	Do they need <u>something</u> that they don't have? (2019年6月四级三卷)
特殊疑问句	Why need we <u>be concerned</u> ? (Oxford)	Why do you always need to complain? (Oxford)

3 ought/ ought to

如果将 ought 视为情态动词，则不符合「情态动词 + 动词原型」的用法；如果将 ought to 整体视为词组情态动词 (phrasal modal verb)，则其否定句、疑问句的用法不符合情态动词的特征。另外，在实际语言使用中，ought to 极少用于疑问句。

	例句
肯定句	You ought to see a doctor. (Oxford)
否定句	I ought not to have been so direct. (Oxford)
一般疑问句	Ought we to consult them first? (Oxford)
特殊疑问句	What ought I to do ? (Oxford)

4 used to

表示「曾经」，即过去曾经如何，而现在情况已经发生了变化。与 ought/ ought to 类似，如果将 used 视为情态动词，则不符合「情态动词 + 动词原型」的用法，所以一般将 used to 整体视为情态动词，但是其否定和疑问用法不符合情态动词的一般用法。另外，used to 一般不用于特殊疑问句。

	例句
--	----

^① 另外，need 还可以做名词，表示「需要」，以及衍生的「贫困」「必需品」等词义。

I'm in **need** of some fresh air. (Oxford)

families in **need** (Oxford) 贫穷家庭

day-to-day **needs** (Oxford) 每日必需品



肯定句	He used to live here. (Oxford)
否定句	He didn't use to smoke. (Oxford) ^① He used not to smoke. ^②
一般疑问句	Did you use to live in Manchester?

5 had better^③

表示「最好」，用于建议、催促或威胁等。一般将 had better 整体视为词组情态动词。其肯定形式符合情态动词的用法；否定形式为 had better not；无疑问形式。

例句	
肯定句	You had better be careful. (Oxford)
否定句	You had better not move.

半情态动词的概念还可以扩展。英语中有一些结构虽然不是严格意义上的助动词，但是在功能上接近助动词，在实用语法分析中可以整体视为助动词，这种结构可以称为半助动词（semi-auxiliary verb）^④。

半助动词	例句
be about to	The calf was about to fall into the river. (2009 年高考)
be able to	Why was David able to get the job in the company? (2009 年高考)
be apt to	If you are self-employed or in a job that doesn't have a standard retirement age, you may be more apt to delay thinking about these issues. (2014 年 6 月六级三卷)
be bound to	It is bound to gain support from the local people. (2018 年 12 月四级一卷)
be due to	Microsoft's Internet Explorer and Apple's Safari both offer DNT; Google's Chrome is due to do so this year. (2013 年考研)
be going to	If you are going to release a fish, do so right away. (2008 年高考)
be liable to	Ecosystems are impermanent systems that are often liable to collapse, and occasionally do so. (LSAT)
be meant to	I picked up the stem cells in Providence, Rhode Island, and was meant to fly to Washington then back to London. (2016 年高考)
be obliged to	They were inevitably disadvantaged in the marketplace because they were obliged to obtain money for their supplies from usurers. (GRE)

^① 也有用 didn't used to 的，但是一般认为这种是错误用法。

^② 在特别正式的文体中，也有用 used not to 表示 used to 的否定的。

^③ 极少数情况下，也有用 had best 的。

^④ 如果接受这样多次扩展，则助动词属于封闭词类还是开放词类的边界就会逐渐模糊。



be supposed to	Taylor was supposed to be able to learn from the messages she received. (2018年12月四级一卷)
be sure to	If schools stayed the way they are, parents were sure to protest. (2018年6月四级二卷)
be to	You are to make a choice between the two. (四级写作要求)
be (un)willing to	If your child is unwilling to discuss something, don't insist he tell you what's on his mind. (2009年高考)
have to	They have to find easy chairs to match the tables. (2011年高考)
have got to	You've got to get me back to the United Kingdom. (2016年高考)
come to	What have some waiters come to realize according to a survey? (2016年12月四级一卷)
fail to	If we fail to do so, we'll live to regret it. (2015年高考)
get to	Get to know themselves better (2016年高考)
tend to	Just as importantly, we tend to associate fresh air with health care. (2019年高考)
would rather	And the quit rates were particularly convincing given that before the study started, most of the people had said they'd rather cut down gradually before quitting. (2017年6月四级二卷)

部分使用半助动词的句子可以改写为 It...that...句型。

半助动词	例句
be certain to	When a relaxing impulse was indulged, the style — that sure index of an author's literary worth — was certain to become verbose. (GRE) → When a relaxing impulse was indulged, it is certain that the style — that sure index of an author's literary worth — will become verbose.
be likely to	They're more likely to be widowed, and if they're the ones who become ill, they're more likely to get divorced. (2019年6月四级一卷) → It is more likely that they will be widowed, and if they're the ones who become ill, it is more likely that they will get divorced.
appear to	Dozens of new theme cafes appear to change the situation. (2015年高考) → It appears that dozens of new theme cafes are changing the situation.
happen to	Even if Steel does happen to be among that tiny minority, says Bostock, it's "pretty irresponsible" to suggest that 20-hour days are simply a question of discipline for the rest of us. (2020年9月六级二卷) → Even if it happens that Steel is among that tiny minority...
seem to	The birds seem to be able to smell wax from a long distance away. (2012年高考)



	→ It seems that the birds are able to smell wax from a long distance away.
turn out to	Children of educated and upper-middle-class parents turn out to be far more curious, even at early ages, than children of working class and lower class families. (2017年12月四级三卷) → It turns out that children of educated and upper-middle-class parents are far more curious...

5.1.2 实义动词

1) 实义动词的分类

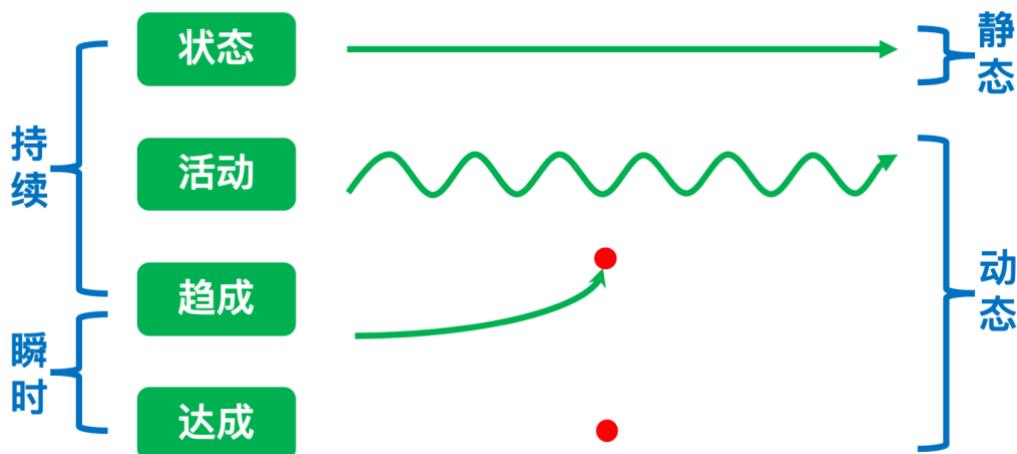
实义动词 (notional verb) 即有实际意义的动词，表示一个动作或一种状态，也称为行为动词 (action verb) 或主动词 (main verb)。实义动词可以从多个角度进行分类。

① 按变形是否规则，可以分为规则动词和不规则动词 ([附录二 动词变形表](#))。

② 按是否后接宾语或补语等成分，可以分为及物动词 (transitive verb)、不及物动词 (intransitive verb) 和连系动词 (copula 或 linking verb)。

实义动词	用法
及物动词	单宾及物动词 6.1.2 主谓宾 SVO
	双宾及物动词 6.1.3 主谓双宾 SVoO
不及物动词	6.1.1 主谓 SV
连系动词	6.1.5-1 主系表 SV_LCs

③ 按其词义与时间的关系，可以分为持续动词 (durative verb) 和瞬时动词 (momentary verb)，又可以分为静态动词 (stative verb) 和动态动词 (dynamic verb)，还可以分为状态动词 (state)、活动动词 (activity)、趋成动词 (accomplishment) 和达成动词 (achievement)。这三种划分相互交叠，关系如下图。





▲ 状态动词：属于静态动词、持续动词，表示无变化的持续状态。除非另外声明，状态不会改变。通常不用进行时态和完成进行时态，用一般时态居多，也可以用完成时态。

I don't **know**, but I want to **know**. (2019 年高考)

It's no surprise that Jennifer Senior's insightful, provocative magazine cover story, "I **love** My Children, I **Hate** My Life," is arousing much chatter. (2011 年考研)

But she saw beyond that bitter moment a long procession of years to come that **would belong** to her absolutely. (2018 年专四)

▲ 活动动词：属于动态动词、持续动词，表示有变化的活动。除非另外声明，活动不会停止。可用进行时态，用一般时态常表示习惯性动作，用完成时态和完成进行时态常搭配「for + 时间段」。

I **walk** every day.

We **are walking**.

We **have walked** for an hour.

I **have been driving** for a whole day.

▲ 趋成动词：表示动作持续一段时间完成某目标，属于动态动词，侧重动作时表持续含义，侧重完成目标时表瞬时。用进行时态和完成进行时态，侧重动作，表持续含义；用一般时态和完成时态，侧重完成目标，表瞬时含义，可搭配「in + 时间段」。

How can China **build** a hospital in 10 days?

The workers **are building** a house.

They **have been counting** the votes for two days.

They **counted** the votes.

▲ 达成动词：属于动态动词、瞬时动词，表示瞬间完成的动作。通常不用进行时态和完成进行时态，常用一般时态和完成时态，不可搭配「for + 时间段」「in + 时间段」。

The shopkeeper **recognized** him as a local vagrant. (Oxford)

Sorry, I **didn't notice**.

He **died**.

上述四类动词的划分只是通常划分，实际上同一个动词在不同的语境下可能变为另外一类。

上述用法总结也只是一般情况，实际使用可以更灵活。

You're **being foolish**. (状态动词 be 用进行时态表示暂时状态)

He's now **living** at my place. (状态动词 live 用进行时态表示暂时状态)

– What does he do?

– He **drives** a taxi. (活动动词 drive 此时近似状态动词，表示其职业)

I'm **dying**. (达成动词 die 用进行时态表示即将发生)



2) 短语动词 ☆☆

1 概念区分

「短语动词」「词组动词」「动词词组」「动词短语」「动宾搭配」「动宾结构」「动宾短语」等概念在专业语法和实用语法上存在着指代相互交叉的情况。

首先，「短语动词」=「词组动词」，因为「短语」和「词组」都是 phrase 的翻译。同理，「动词词组」=「动词短语」。其次，「动宾搭配」=「动宾结构」=「动宾短语」，因为「短语」「结构」「搭配」也都是 phrase 的意思。

但是，问题并未完全解决：「短语动词/词组动词」「动词词组/动词短语」「动宾搭配/动宾结构/动宾短语」三者之间仍然存在指代相互交叉的情况。

Look out!

Look at you.

I **read books** every day.

例子	look out	look at	look at you	read books
传统语法	phrasal verb 词组动词/短语动词	prepositional verb 介词动词	verb phrase 动词词组/动词短语	
实用语法	动词词组、动词短语			动宾搭配/动宾结构/动宾短语
本书	phrasal verb 短语动词			verb phrase 动词词组

可见，本书仍然遵循传统语法的划分，采用「短语动词」(phrasal verb) 和「动词词组」(verb phrase) 的术语，但是不使用「介词动词」(prepositional verb)^① (👉 [6.1.5-3 Vi + PO](#))，而是将其归入「短语动词」。

英语中共有短语动词 10000 多个，常用的也有 400 个左右，所以重点和难点均在于背诵并运用数量如此庞大的短语动词。

2 语法分析

^①⚠ 传统语法区分短语动词与介词动词，本书则采用最宽泛的定义，只要能整体理解的都算短语动词（包括动词与形容词/分词的组合）。如果采用传统语法的划分方法，则可使用如下方法判断短语动词与介词动词（可多种方法混合使用）。

1 宾语法：不带宾语的肯定是短语动词，带宾语的则两者均有可能。

无宾语：My heart will **go on**. —Céline Dion → go on 是短语动词。

2 移动法：将宾语替换为宾格代词，可以移动到 P 之前的是短语动词，不能移动是介词动词。

短语动词：She **cut up** the meat. 🌐 → ✓ She cut **it** up.

介词动词：He **looked after** the baby. 🌐 → ✗ He looked **her** after.

3 删除法：将宾语前的 P 去掉，句子仍然成立且句意不变的是短语动词，句子不成立或句意改变的是介词动词。

短语动词：She **cut up** the meat. → ✓ She cut the meat.

介词动词：He **looked after** the baby. → ✗ He looked her.

介词动词：I **believe in** you. → ✓ I **believe** you. (句意改变)



从语法的角度，分析短语动词的内部结构有助于准确地使用这些短语动词。「短语动词」 = 「动词 + 副词 and/or 介词」，传统语法将其中的介词和副词称为小品词 (particle)，本书仍称副词、介词。另外，从实用的角度出发，本书将 come true 这种「动词 + 形容词」以及 get going 这种「动词 + 分词」的组合也纳入短语动词的范畴，共分为如下六类。

及物	构成 ①	Vt + 副 + 宾、Vt + 宾 + 副
	例句	<p>She cut up <u>the meat</u>. = She cut it up.</p> <p>In a fact, he even scared <u>my classmates away</u> during they came over to play or do homework with me. (2013 年高考)</p> <p>But it was the ones that mentioned the actions of neighbours that drove down <u>power use</u>. (2015 年 12 月六级三卷)</p> <p>Their calculations show that the impact kicked up <u>a dust cloud</u> that cut off sunlight for several months, inhibiting photosynthesis in plants. (托福 TPO8)</p>
	构成 ②	Vt + 宾 1 + 介 + 宾 2
	例句	<p>Rid <u>cigarette cartons of all advertisements</u>. (2020 年 7 月六级一卷)</p> <p>Online systems may deprive <u>teachers of opportunities</u> to make the best use of their expertise for their students. (2018 年 6 月四级一卷)</p> <p>In flat plains country, he saw moraines (accumulations of earth and loose rock that form at the edges of glaciers) that reminded <u>him of the terminal moraines</u> found at the end of valley glaciers in the Alps. (托福 TPO19)</p>
及物	构成 ③	Vi + 介 + 宾
	例句	<p>Meg is expected to come straight home from school and look after <u>her younger sister</u>. (Oxford)</p> <p>My definition revolves around <u>the concept</u> of "stickiness" - creations and experiences to which others adhere. (2012 年考研一)</p> <p>More people were available to care for <u>infants and the aged</u>. (托福 TPO35)</p>
	构成 ④	Vi + 副 + 介 + 宾
	例句	<p>Researchers from Georgia Tech say that they have come up with <u>a low-cost device</u> that gets around this problem: a smart keyboard. (2019 年高考)</p> <p>Although there was no competition between the technologies, there was rivalry between nations. The Italians made energetic and successful efforts to catch up with <u>Germany</u>. (托福 TPO49)</p> <p>On the Sunday afternoon she stood at her bedroom window, looking across at <u>the oak-trees</u> of the wood, in whose branches a twilight was tangled, below the bright sky of the afternoon. (2017 年专四)</p>



不及物	构成 5	Vi + 副
	例句	All your cares will fly away . (Oxford) In a fact, he even scared my classmates away during they came over to play or do homework with me. (2013 年高考) Its prices have gone up over the years. (2017 年 6 月四级二卷)
	构成 6	Vi + 形容词/名词/分词 ^①
	例句	Dreams can come true . (Oxford) He's gone crazy . (Oxford) Every day he makes sure that fresh vegetables or high quality oil are using for cooking. (2016 年高考) Toyota, let's go places . Let's get going .

以上分析在语法上是有意义的，但是在实际使用中，这些短语动词视为一个整体即可，一般不必纠结其内部结构^②。所以笼统而言，语法视角无助于识记这些短语动词。

3 语义分析

从语义的角度，可以不必顾及动词是否及物，不必区分动词后接的是介词还是副词，可以用公式将短语动词表示为：**短语动词 = V + P**。从短语动词的词义是否直观地来自于其中的 V 和 P，可以进一步将短语动词分为两类。

① 直观短语动词

大部分短语动词的词义等于 V 与 P 字面词义的简单叠加。

look 看 ahead 向前 = 向前看

look 看 around 四周 = 四下看

look 看 at 朝向 = 看着

look 看 back 向后 = 向后看

look 看 for 表目标 = 寻找

look 看 like 像 = 看着像

从认知语言学的角度来说，抽象概念往往是以直观概念为本体的一种隐喻，所以 V 和 P 的字面词义稍做引申，即可得到短语动词的词义。

look 看 down 向下 = 向下看 → look down upon 瞧不起

look 看 forward 向前 = 向前看 → look forward to 期待

look 看 in 向内 = 向内看 → 拜访

^① △ 这一类往往可以做更细致的语法分析，但是从实用的角度来说，整体视为短语动词反而更方便。

^② 短语动词中的副词、介词部分可理解为状语，往往可用完全倒装（[7.2.1 完全倒装](#)），比如 The bird flew away. → **Away** flew the bird. 另外一些可理解为补语，协助动词表达基本语义（[6.2.2 补语](#)）。



look 看 into 向内 = 向内看 → 调查
 look 看 over 在上方 = 浏览
 look 看 through 穿过 = 在...中查找
 look 看 to 表方向 = 看向 → 指望
 look 看 up 向上 to 朝向 = 向上看着 → 敬重

有的短语动词中的 V 单用也成立，其后的 P 一般用于表示该动作的状态。

▲ on 表示进行

My heart will **go on**. — Celine Dion

Keep Calm and **Carry On**

The music **played on**.

▲ up 表示完成

His trip to Hawaii has **used up** all his money. (2012 年 12 月六级一卷)

Halve the tomatoes, then **cut them up** coarsely. (Collins)

chop the meat up into small cubes (Oxford)

He has long been fed **up** with traveling. (2015 年 12 月六级二卷)

② 隐晦短语动词

少数短语动词引申较远，不易从原动词猜测其含义。

look 看 up 向上 = 向上看 → 查找?

look 看 after 在...后面 = 在后面看 → 照看?

look 看 out 向外 = 向外看 → 注意?

look 看 on 在上面 = 看待 → 旁观?

④ 文体分析

从用法上看，很多短语动词都可以替换一个词义相同或相近的动词。一般来说，单个词的动词比短语动词文体更正式。

▲ come up with → invent

Researchers from Georgia Tech say that they **have come up with/ designed/ invented** a low-cost device that gets around this problem: a smart keyboard. (2019 年高考)

▲ go on → continue

Prices **continued / went on** to fall during April. (Oxford)

▲ put out → extinguish

Firemen were soaking everything to **extinguish / put out** the blaze. (Oxford)

▲ look at carefully → scrutinize

Customers were warned to **scrutinize** the small print. (Oxford)

Customers were warned to **look at** the small print **carefully**.

▲ look down upon → despise



She secretly **despises / looks down upon** his work. (Collins)

▲ look into → investigate

Krebs **investigated / looked into** experimental plots in Canada's Yukon territory that contained hare populations. (托福 TPO27)

另外，短语动词也可能替换为名词，文体往往也更正式。

▲ look back → retrospect/ hindsight (名词)

Perhaps, in **retrospect**, I shouldn't have gone. (Oxford)

With **hindsight**, I should never have gone. (Oxford)

If I **look back**, I shouldn't have gone.

5 《常见短语动词 400》

如前所述，**短语动词 = V + P**。其中，最常见的 V 有 20 个，最常见的 X 有 10 个，两者排列组合即可得到 200 个短语动词（其中有部分不成立），组成了英语最常见短语动词中的大部分，如：look at 看着、look back 回头看、look down 俯瞰、look in 向内看、look off 掉转视线、look on 旁观、look out 向外看、look over 浏览、look to 指望、look up 抬头看。

最常见 V	break、bring、carry、come、find、get、give、go、hold、look、make、move、pick、point、put、set、sit、take、turn、work
最常见 P	at、back、down、in、off、on、out、over、to、up

这 200 个左右的短语动词虽然数量不多，但是在使用频率上却占据了 400 个常用短语动词的大部分。同理，「常见短语动词 400」虽然只占 10000 多个短语动词的 4%，但是使用频率也占据了大部分，所以掌握了「常见短语动词 400」就足够一般情况使用。「常见短语动词 400」，请在 EnglishBuddy 微信公众号回复「短语动词」获取。



5.2 时态

时态即「时间 + 状态」，所以一般说的时态准确来说应该是表示时间的时 (tense) 和表示状态的体 (aspect) 两个概念的结合^①。时间即动作位于时间轴上的哪个时间 (when)，分为「过去的过去」「过去」「过去的将来」「现在」「将来」五种。状态则表示动作的状态 (how)，分为「一般」「完成」「进行」「完成进行」四种。用时间和状态排列组合，即可得 16 种时态。

时间 状态	过去 的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
一般		did = did do ²	would do ⁴	do/does = do/does do ¹	will do ³
完成		had done ⁶	would have done ⁸	have/has done ⁵	will have done ⁷
进行		be ^{was/were} doing ¹⁰	would be doing ¹²	be ^{am/is/are} doing ⁹	will be doing ¹¹
完成 进行		had been doing ¹⁴	would have been doing ¹⁶	have/has been doing ¹³	will have been doing ¹⁵

上表中的图形只可大概示意各种时态最典型的情况，具体用法需要仔细分析。由上表可见：

- ① 第一个助动词表现时间：do/does、be^{am/is/are}、have/has 对应「现在」，did、be^{was/were}、had 对应「过去」，will 对应「将来」，would 对应「过去的将来」。
- ② 实义动词的形式表现状态：动词原形 do 对应「一般」，现在分词 doing 对应「进行」，done 对应「完成」，倒数第二个助动词 been + 现在分词 doing 对应「完成进行」。

^①一般语言学习理解「时态 = 时间 + 状态」即可，沿用传统的时态称呼并无大碍。



5.2.1 一般时态

时间状态	过去 的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
		did = did do ²	would do ⁴	do/does = do/does do ¹	will do ³
一般		●	●	●	● → now

① do/does = do/does do 一般现在时

完整形式为 do 助动词 + do 实义动词，两者合并为 do 实义动词。第三人称单数完整形式为 does 助动词 + do 实义动词，两者合并为 does 实义动词。表示发生在「现在」的事情，细分有如下用法。

用法	例句
一般描述	Justice resides in the hearts of men. 公道自在人心。(Oxford)
客观存在	The earth revolves around the sun. (Oxford)
习惯动作	Every day he makes sure that fresh vegetables or high quality oil are using for cooking. (2016 年高考)

② did = did do 一般过去时

完整形式为 did 助动词 + do 实义动词，两者合并为 did 实义动词。表示发生在「过去」的事情，细分有如下用法。

用法	例句
一般描述	In 1931, Addams became the first American woman to win the Nobel Peace Prize. (2016 年高考)
情况改变	Northern Vietnam was Chinese territory.
习惯动作	I got up at six every day in high school.

③ will do 一般将来时

完整形式为 will 助动词 + do 实义动词，助动词 will 也可以替换为 shall。表示发生在「将来」的事情，也可以表示情态意义（意愿、命令、请求等）。

用法	例句
一般描述	They will quickly arrive whenever a beekeeper is taking honey from his beehives, and will even enter churches when beeswax candles are being lit. (2012 年高考) More and more women will sit in the boardroom. (2019 年 6 月四级二卷) Prices will vary according to where it is bought. (剑桥雅思 15)
情态意义	You shall not frighten me out of this. (Oxford)



	Every employer shall take all practicable steps to ensure the safety of employees. (Oxford) Will you have a cognac?
--	--

4 would do 过去将来时

完整形式为 **would** 助动词 + **do** 实义动词。表示发生在「过去的将来」的事情，语境中需要出现或暗示「过去」时间作为参照。也可表示情态意义（意愿、请求等）。可用于虚拟语气（[5.4.3 虚拟语气](#)）。

用法	例句
一般描述	He <u>said</u> he would be away for a couple of days. (Oxford) After <u>being dogged</u> by technical delays for years, Sir Richard Branson, Virgin Galactic' s founder, <u>had recently suggested</u> that a SpaceShipTwo craft would carry its first paying customers as soon as February 2015. (2015年12月六级三卷) But for five years the meat packers <u>refused</u> to follow these, claiming that they would be too expensive to obey. (剑桥雅思 15)
情态意义	I would love to work in America. (Oxford) Would you pour the wine, please? (Oxford) On December 1, 1955, in Montgomery, Alabama, Rasa Parks would not give up her seat on a bus to a passenger. (2016年高考)

5.2.2 完成时态

时间状态	过去的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
		had done ⁶	would have done ⁸	have/has done ⁵	will have done ⁷
完成					

5 have/has done 现在完成时

完整形式为 **have/has** 助动词 + **do** 实义动词。表示「过去」发生的某动作已经完成，对「现在」有影响。常与一般过去时比较使用，一般来说一般过去时表示一般描述发生在过去的动作，而现在完成时则强调其影响。

Recently, people **have begun** studying the connection between the natural world and healing. (2019年高考)



Yet the new system **has** not yet **worked out** any cheaper for the universities. (2020 年考研一)

Experiments in psychology **have shown** the power of "priming" — small unnoticed factors that can affect behavior in big ways. (2018 年专八)

6 had done 过去完成时

完整形式为 have 助动词 + do 实义动词。表示「过去的过去」发生的某动作已经完成，对「过去」有影响，语境中需要出现或暗示「过去」时间作为参照。

One answer, I soon discovered, lay in people's beliefs about why they **had failed**. (2016 年 12 月四级二卷)

Once the council **had become** the legal owner, it planned to sell the land for housing. (剑桥雅思 15)

By the early eleventh century, however, the empire **had regained** almost half of its lost possessions, its new frontiers were secure, and its influence extended far beyond its borders. (GMAT)

7 will have done 将来完成时

完整形式为 will 助动词 + have 助动词 + done 实义动词，可以视为 will do + have done = will have done。表示「将来」某动作已经完成，并对之后某个时间点有影响。

Picture a typical MBA lecture theatre twenty years ago. In it the majority of students **will have conformed** to the standard model of the time: male, middle class and Western. (2011 年 6 月六级一卷)

What will happen when the Sun dies? In several billion years, our mother star will burn much brighter...The Sun **will have become** a white dwarf star. (托福 TPO50)

In legal and health care services, it may mislead clients by suggesting that lawsuits or medical procedures **will have guaranteed** outcomes. (GMAT)

8 would have done 过去将来完成时

完整形式为 would 助动词 + have 助动词 + done 实义动词，可以视为 would do + have done = would have done。表示「过去的将来」某动作已经完成，并对之后某个时间点有影响，语境中需要出现或暗示「过去」时间作为参照。常用于虚拟语气（[5.4.3 虚拟语气](#)）。

When I was in high school, dozens in my class alone **would have answered** differently. (2016 年 6 月六级三卷)

But the other four all said that what they were seeing about themselves was incalculable, and they didn't think it **would have become** apparent without the ground of financial stability being ripped out from underneath them. (2013 年专四)



Unemployment **would have risen** more slowly or **fallen** more rapidly if productivity had increased more slowly, or the labor force had increased more slowly, or the hours of work had fallen more steeply, or total output had grown more rapidly. (GMAT)

5.2.3 进行时态

时间状态	过去的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
进行		be ^{was/were} doing ¹⁰	would be doing ¹²	be ^{am/is/are} doing ⁹	will be doing ¹¹

9 **be^{am/is/are} doing** 现在进行时

完整形式为 **be** 助动词 **am/is/are** + **doing** 实义动词。表示「现在」某事情正在发生，或某动作正在持续进行。也可表示「将来」即将发生的事情。

用法	例句
正在进行	<p>She is selling more and buying less. (2011 年高考)</p> <p>In a social situation, eye contact with another person can show that you are paying attention in a friendly way. (2020 年考研一)</p> <p>Now, the news industry is returning to something closer to the coffee house. (2013 年专八)</p>
即将发生	<p>(有人敲门时候回答) I'm coming / Coming! 🌎</p> <p>We're having the kids for the weekend. (Oxford)</p> <p>I don't know about you, but I'm starving. (Oxford)</p>
重复动作	<p>The world is constantly changing. (Oxford)</p> <p>Lucy is continually finding fault with her sister. (2014 年专四)</p> <p>How can I concentrate if you are continually interrupting me with silly questions? (2016 年专四)</p>

10 **be^{was/were} doing** 过去进行时

完整形式为 **be** 助动词 **was/were** + **doing** 实义动词。表示「过去」某事情正在发生，或某动作正在持续进行。也可表示「过去的将来」即将发生的事情。

用法	例句
正在进行	I was telling someone how much I had enjoyed reading Barack Obama's <i>Dreams From My Father</i> and how it had changed my views of our President. (2013 年高考)



	In recent weeks the No.2 executives at Avon and American Express quit with the explanation that they were looking for a CEO post. (2011 年考研一) When I was working in an office I had to use survival techniques such as loitering in a meeting room, toilet or corridor to take any personal calls. (2014 年专八)
即将发生	A contingent was departing from Cairo. (Oxford)
重复动作	He was constantly exploring new ways of working and changed his artistic name often throughout his life, as if to slough off previous identities and adopt new ones. (<i>The Economist</i>)

1 1 will be doing 将来进行时

完整形式为 will 助动词 + be 助动词 + doing 实义动词，可以视为 will do + be doing = will be doing。表示「将来」某事正在发生，或某动作正在进行。

Rivals **will be charging** sales tax where they hadn't before. (2019 年考研一)

Janssen says that by 2030 half of the world's population **will be living** with water stress where the demand exceeds the supply over a certain period of time. (剑桥雅思 15)

Hence, a comparatively small number of large firms **will be competing** for the same group of consumers. (GMAT)

1 2 would be doing 过去将来进行时

完整形式为 would 助动词 + be 助动词 + doing 实义动词，可以视为 would do + be doing = would be doing。表示「过去的将来」某事正在发生，或某动作正在进行，语境中需要出现或暗示「过去」时间作为参照。可用于虚拟语气（[5.4.3 虚拟语气](#)）。

For a full three minutes in our lives we **would be experiencing** the excitement of being film "Stars"! (2012 年高考)

If anyone had told me three years ago that I **would be spending** most of my weekends camping. I would have laughed heartily. (2017 年高考)

We knew that nine out of ten people walking into that store **would be learning** about Skullcandy for the first time. (2013 年专四)

5.2.4 完成进行时态 ★★★

时间状态	过去的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
完成 进行		had been doing ¹⁴	would have been doing ¹⁶	have/has been doing ¹³	will have been doing ¹⁵



1 3 have been doing 现在完成进行时

完整形式为 have/has 助动词 + been 助动词 + doing 实义动词，可以视为 have/has done + be doing = have/has been doing。表示「过去」发生的某动作已经部分完成，对「现在」有影响，并且「现在」该动作仍在持续进行。

Languages **have been coming and going** for thousands of years, but in recent times there has been less coming and a lot more going. (2018 年高考)

Big chains **have been collecting** sales tax nationwide because they typically have physical stores in whatever state a purchase is being shipped to. (2019 年考研一)

Since the late 1970's, in the face of a severe loss of market share in dozens of industries, manufacturers in the United States **have been trying** to improve productivity — and therefore enhance their international competitiveness — through cost-cutting programs. (GMAT)

1 4 had been doing 过去完成进行时

完整形式为 had 助动词 + been 助动词 + doing 实义动词，可以视为 had done + be doing = had been doing。表示「过去的过去」发生的某动作已经部分完成，对「过去」有影响，并且「过去」该动作仍在持续进行，语境中需要出现或暗示「过去」时间作为参照。

We had met, I gathered, 19 years before, when he **had been living** in the hermitage as an assistant to one of the monks. (2012 年 12 月六级一卷)

Next I checked the log of his vital signs and saw that his respiration and heart rate **had been climbing**, but his temperature was steady. (2015 年专四)

The confirmation researchers **had been seeking** was finally achieved in studies involving two varieties of warblers. (GRE)

1 5 will have been doing 将来完成进行时

完整形式为 will 助动词 + have 助动词 + been 助动词 + doing 实义动词，可以视为 will do + have done + be doing = will have been doing。表示「将来」某动作已经部分完成，并对之后某个时间点有影响，并且仍在持续进行。该时态在实际语言使用中极少见，因为一般语境无需如此复杂的时态。

The play is coming off in August. By then the play **will have been running** for three months.

1 6 would have been doing 过去将来完成进行时

完整形式为 would 助动词 + have 助动词 + been 助动词 + doing 实义动词，可以视为 would do + have done + be doing = would have been doing。表示「过去的将来」某动作已经部分完成，



并对之后某个时间点有影响，并且仍在持续进行，语境中需要出现或暗示「过去」时间作为参照。该时态在实际语言使用中极少见，因为一般语境无需如此复杂的时态。

Up to that time he **would have been translating** those books.

5.2.5 时态注意事项

1) 其他表示将来的用法

除了 4 种将来时态（一般将来时 will do、将来完成时 will have done、将来进行时 will be doing、将来完成进行时 will have been doing），英语中还有其他表示将来的用法。因为将来的事情尚未发生，所以有主观意图（主观上筹备、计划、推动某事发生）和客观预测（根据实际情况预测某事发生）的区分，笼统说所有将来时间表示法都有这两种用法，实际使用中各种用法有所侧重，根据句意判断即可。

	例句
be going to do	If you are going to release a fish, do so right away. (2008 年高考) In other words, if you're going to make a print product, make it for the people who are already obsessed with it. (2016 年考研) But as more and more accumulations of strata were catalogued in more and more places, it became clear that the sequences of rocks sometimes differed from region to region and that no rock type was ever going to become a reliable time marker throughout the world. (托福 TPO6)
be doing	(有人敲门时候回答) I'm coming / Coming! We're having the kids for the weekend. (Oxford) I don't know about you, but I'm starving . (Oxford)
be to do /be about to do	We're just about to start . (Oxford) If you are to continue to live on the earth, you may well read and act on the ideas in this book. (2008 年高考) Graves' s study of physically separated fish populations show that there must be large differences between the environments of the isolated populations if allopatric speciation is to take place . (托福 TPO31)
主将从现	2.3.2-1 第一条件句 I'll check for you, if you want. (Oxford) If you're clear about where you want to go, the rest of the world will either help you get there or get out of the way. (2014 年高考) <u>If you look at this map</u> , you'll see the familiar outline of the park, with the river forming the northern boundary, and a gate in each of the other three walls. (剑桥雅思 15)



2) 一般过去时 **vs** 现在完成时

时间状态	过去的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
		did = did do		have/has done	
					

一般过去时 **did = did do** 和现在完成时 **have done** 描述的都是过去动作，所以易混淆，尝试区分时又易陷入误区。

误区 ① 一般过去时发生在比较远的「过去」，现在完成时发生在比较近的「过去」。

实际上，两者都描述的动作都发生在过去，但是这个「过去」距离现在的远近则不确定。即使同一个句中同时使用了这两种时态，现在完成时未必就比一般过去时。

The universe **has cooled down** since the Big Bang 13.7 billion years ago, but life **appeared** on Earth rather recently, some 3.8 billion years ago. 

误区 ② 现在完成时描述的动作已经完结

大家常把现在完成时的「完成」理解为「完结」的意思，认为现在完成时描述的动作已经结束。实际上，只有实义动词是趋成动词和达成动词时（[5.1.2-1 实义动词的分类](#)），完成时态的动作才是完结了的。

▲ 趋成动词：We **have built** two houses.  我们已经**建成了**两栋房子。

▲ 达成动词：We **have finished** the task.  我们已经**完成了**任务。

如果是活动动词（[5.1.2-1 实义动词的分类](#)），则动作未必完结，比如在散步过程中说：

▲ 活动动词：We **have walked** for almost an hour. Let's head home now.  我们已经走了快一个小时了，现在往家走吧。（walk 的动作仍在进行）

一般过去时与现在完成时的区别在于：**说话者是否强调过去某动作对现在的影响**。从普遍联系的角度来说，过去发生的动作必然对现在有影响，但是选用一般过去时简单陈述这一动作，还是选用现在完成时强调其影响，却是说话者主观的选择。

– Joey **saw** a movie called Roma last night and said it's really good. Wanna check it out?  (单纯表示看了电影)

– But I **have seen** it.  (表示已经看过了，拒绝观影邀请)

Grown-ups are often surprised by how well they remember something they **learned** as children but **have never practiced** ever since. (2012 年高考)

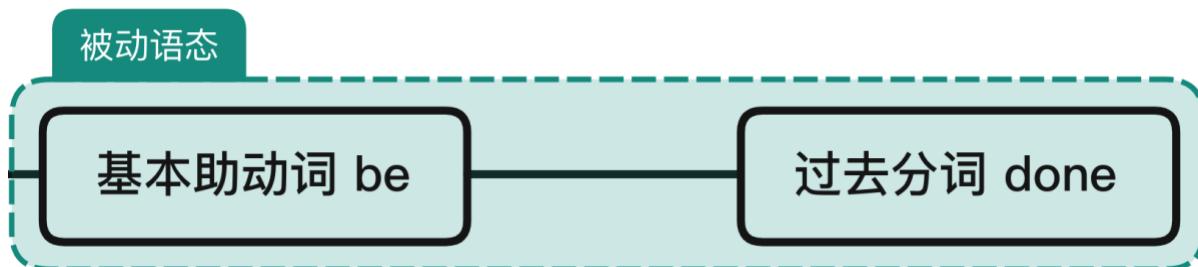
International bodies like the United Nations and the European Union **have begun** to develop policies concerned with children's right to play, and to consider implications for leisure facilities and educational programmes. (剑桥雅思 14)



Finally, income transfers in our country **have** always **focused** on the elderly, disabled, and dependent, neglecting the needs of the working poor, so that the dramatic expansion of cash and in-kind transfers does not necessarily mean that those failing in the labor market are adequately protected. (GMAT)

5.3 语态

语态 (voice) 表示主语和动词之间是主动还是被动的关系，分为主动语态 (active voice) 和被动语态 (passive voice)。谓语动词和非谓语动词都有主动语态和被动语态，非谓语动词的主动语态和被动语态见非谓语动词全表（[1.1.4 非谓语动词的扩展形式](#)），谓语动词的主动语态即前述 16 种时态（[5.2 时态](#)）。下文讲解谓语动词的被动语态，其一般结构^①是：



理论上，16 种时态中的每一种的主动语态形式都对应一种被动语态形式，也可以说被动语态也有 16 种时态形式。

时间状态	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
一般	$\text{be}^{\text{was/were}}$ done ²	would be done ⁴	$\text{be}^{\text{am/is/are}}$ done ¹	will be done ³
完成	had been done ⁶	would have been done ⁸	have/has been done ⁵	will have been done ⁷
进行	$\text{be}^{\text{was/were}}$ being done ¹⁰	would be being done ¹²	$\text{be}^{\text{am/is/are}}$ being done ⁹	will be being done ¹¹
完成 进行	had been being done ¹⁴	would have been being done ¹⁶	have/has been being done ¹³	will have been being done ¹⁵

由上表可见：

- ① 被动语态的结尾都是实义动词的过去分词形式 done。
- ② 第一个助动词表现时间： $\text{be}^{\text{am/is/are}}$ 、have 对应「现在」， $\text{be}^{\text{was/were}}$ 、had 对应「过去」，will 对应「将来」，would 对应「过去的将来」。
- ③ 最后一个或最后两个助动词区分状态： $\text{be}^{\text{am/is/are}}$ 、 $\text{be}^{\text{was/were}}$ 、be 对应「一般」，being 对应「进行」，been 对应「完成」，been being 对应「完成进行」。

^① 动词词组 get done 也可以表示被动。



上述 16 种被动语态只是理论形式，其中有多种很少在实际语言中使用，不易找到例句，下表以●表示。

被动语态	例句
一般现在时 be am/is/are done ¹	The polar bear is found in the Arctic Circle and some big land masses as far south as Newfoundland. (2019 年高考)
一般过去时 be was/were done ²	She was never invited to a colleague's home. (2016 年 12 月四级一卷)
一般将来时 will be done ³	The most critical skills will be developed before the project even starts, in the form of boot camps, while the rest can be fostered along with the project, putting them to immediate use and thus providing a rich learning context. (2020 年 12 月六级三卷)
过去将来时 would be done ⁴	However, the Justices said that Arizona police would be allowed to verify the legal status of people who come in contact with law enforcement. (2013 年考研一)
现在完成时 have/has been done ⁵	It is particularly valuable in regions where natural groundwater reserves have been polluted , or where seawater is the only water source available. (剑桥雅思 15)
过去完成时 had been done ⁶	Private investment in railroads began in the 1850s following the dramatic expansion of the railroad network, which had been financed by local government. (托福 TPO50)
将来完成时 will have been done ⁷	●
过去将来完成时 would have been done ⁸	Because of industrialization, but also because of a vast increase in agricultural output without which industrialization would have been impossible , Western Europeans by the latter half of the nineteenth century enjoyed higher standards of living and longer, healthier lives than most of the world's peoples. (托福 TPO51)
现在进行时 be am/is/are being done ⁹	People have to look at photos of actors' eyes and then guess what emotion is being expressed in each. (2019 年专四)
过去进行时 be was/were being done ¹⁰	On other occasions he bullied them with skill in ways that did not make it exactly plain to them that they were being bullied . (2011 年专八)
将来进行时 will be being done ¹¹	●



过去将来进行时 would be being done ¹²	<input type="radio"/>
现在完成进行时 have/has been being done ¹³	<input type="radio"/>
过去完成进行时 had been being done ¹⁴	<input type="radio"/>
将来完成进行时 will have been being done ¹⁵	<input type="radio"/>
过去将来完成进行时 would have been being done ¹⁶	<input type="radio"/>

5.4 语气

语法上的语气 (mood) 不完全等同于日常语言中的「语气」，指的是用动词的不同形态来表示说话人是陈述事实、传达命令还是虚拟假设等。英语中有陈述语气 (indicative mood)、祈使语气 (imperative mood) 和虚拟语气 (subjunctive mood) 等三种语气。英语中没有其他语言中可能独立存在的疑问语气 (interrogative mood)，英语疑问一般通过词序变换实现，归于陈述语气一类。

5.4.1 陈述语气

陈述语气用于陈述事实、提出疑问、表达感叹等，用于陈述句（包括肯定句和否定句）、疑问句（包括一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句、反义疑问句^①）和感叹句（[7.3 感叹句](#)）。

肯 定 句	结构	主语 + 第一个助动词 + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...
	例句	<p>Today I tried=助动词 did+实义动词 try cooking a simply dish myself. (2020 年高考)</p> <p>Until now, many sellers that have a physical presence in only a single state or a few states have 助动词 been 系动词(实义动词) able to avoid charging sales taxes when they ship to addresses outside those states. (2019 年考研)</p> <p>Ever since European first explored Australia, people have 助动词 been 助动词 trying 实义动词 to understand the ancient rock drawings and cavings created by the Aborigines, the original inhabitants of the continent. (托福 TPO23)</p>
否 定 句	结构	主语 + 第一个助动词 + 否定副词 + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...
	例句	<p>He did 助动词 <u>not</u> love 实义动词 his children. (2020 年高考)</p> <p>Peopled diet will 助动词 <u>not</u> change 实义动词 due to the EAT-Lancet report.</p>

^① 反义疑问句也称为附加疑问句 (tag question)。



		So, at the end of a decade of thesis-writing, many humanities students leave the profession to do something for which they have 助动词 <u>not been</u> 助动词 trained 实义动词. (2011 年考研)
一般疑问句	结构	第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 主语 + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...?
	例句	Do 助动词 you want 实义动词 a room that's full of life? (2018 年高考) Does 助动词 that mean 实义动词 the link between lower oil prices and growth has weakened? (2016 年 12 月四级一卷) Haven't 助动词 you been 助动词 reading 实义动词 this book all day?
选择疑问句	结构	一般疑问句, or 一般疑问句(可省略重复部分)
	例句	Will 助动词 you or won't 助动词 you come 实义动词? (Oxford) Do 助动词 you want 实义动词 a room that's full of life? Professional? Or are you just looking 实义动词 for a place to relax after a long day? (2018 年高考) Should 助动词 we change 实义动词 the way math is taught in schools, or eliminate 实义动词 some courses entirely? (2018 年 12 月六级二卷)
反义疑问句	结构 ①	肯定句, 第一个助动词 + 否定副词 + 主语(常用代词替换)?
	例句	They have come back, haven't they? You'd rather I didn't say anything, wouldn't you? You will be a good boy, won't you?
	结构 ②	否定句, 第一个助动词 + 主语(常用代词替换)?
	例句	You would scarcely expect her to know that, would you? She can rarely come these days, can she? But that doesn't make for a good essay, does it? (2013 年 12 月六级三卷)
特殊疑问句	结构 ①	特殊疑问词①(不做主语) + 第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 主语 + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...?
	例句	What can kids do at a Youtheater? (2012 年高考) Why cannot I make myself do this or achieve that? (2011 年考研) What have scientists been able to determine from studies of large impact cratering on Mars? (托福 TPO25)
	结构 ②	特殊疑问词(做主语) + 第一个助动词 + (否定副词) + 其他助动词 + 实义动词...?
	例句	Tell me, who did this to you? What counts as meaningful uploading? (2012 年考研一)

① 疑问词并一定是一个词, 语法分析中应该将第一个助动词前的词组整体视为疑问词才符合疑问句「疑问词提前」的一般规律。

How old are you?

Whose umbrella is this?

Which cities have you been visiting these two years?



但是，当谓语动词是系动词 be 的一般现在时和一般过去时，且系动词 be 前没有其他助动词时，结构不同于上述一般结构。

肯定句	结构	主语 + 系动词 be + 表语
	例句	She is an Italian. (Oxford) The weather was freezing. (Oxford)
否定句	结构	主语 + 系动词 be + 否定副词 + 表语
	例句	Research projects on vehicle automation are not new. (剑桥雅思 15) Unfortunately, computing was not part of our studies at school. (2009 年高考)
一般疑问句	结构	系动词 be + (否定副词) + 主语 + 表语?
	例句	Is this Manchester? (Oxford) Is this really okay with you?
选择疑问句	结构	一般疑问句, or 一般疑问句(可省略重复部分)
	例句	Is it me or is it hot in here?
反义疑问句	结构 ①	肯定句, 系动词 be + not + 主语(常用代词替换)?
	例句	Their house is lovely, isn't it? (Oxford) I'm right, aren't I? (Merriam-Webster)
	结构 ②	否定句, 系动词 be + 主语(常用代词替换)?
	例句	Snow isn't white, is it? None of those customers were happy, were they?
特殊疑问句	结构 ①	特殊疑问词(不做主语) + 系动词 be + 主语?
	例句	Where is my coat? (Oxford) Why was David able to get the job in the company? (2009 年高考)
	结构 ②	特殊疑问词(做主语) + 系动词 be + 表语?
	例句	Which position is open to recent school graduates? (2011 年高考) What was wrong with that? (Oxford)

5.4.2 祈使语气

祈使语气用于下达命令、表达祝愿等，用于祈使句 (command/ imperative sentence)。

Run! (Oxford)

① 在反义疑问句中，aren't = am not。



Get out! (Oxford)

Shut your mouth! (Oxford)

如果要加强语气，可以在在句首加上 Do 并重读（[7.1.2 其他强调](#)）。

Do be careful. (Oxford)

Do sit down. (Collins)

Do help yourself to another drink. (Collins)

从结构上来说，祈使句可以视为省略了表示听话者的主语 You^①，后接动词原形，如果将 You 还原出来并重读，可以加强语气（[7.1.2 其他强调](#)）。

You take that seat, and I'll take this one.

You mind your own business and leave this to me!

Don't you forget it!

5.4.3 虚拟语气 ☆☆

英文 subjunctive = sub (下面的) -junctive (连接)，词源轴为：英文 subjunctive ← 法语 subjonctive ← 拉丁文 subjunctivus ← (翻译自) 希腊语 hypotaktike (subordinate)，因为希腊语中的虚拟语气基本只用于从句^②——现代英语中的虚拟语气也大多用于从句。

从语义上来说，虚拟语气重点在于「虚」，「虚」与「实」相对。「实」就是已经发生的事或有可能的事情，所以虚拟语气用于表达建议、愿望、请求、命令（尚未甚至不大可能成为「实」的事情），以及与「实」相反或不大可能的假设等。

古英语中有专门表示虚拟语气的动词形式，但是只遗留了两个形式到现代英语中，即 be 型虚拟语气和 were 型虚拟语气，所以英语中狭义的虚拟语气只有这两种。但是，非真实条件句也能表示虚拟、假设的功能，而且与 be 型虚拟语气在结构上也有共通之处^③。所以一般将 be 型虚拟语气、were 型虚拟语气、非真实条件句统称为虚拟语气。

		过去的过去	过去	过去的将来	现在	将来
虚拟	从句	【-A】 had done/been ^① had been doing ^② were to have done ^③	【-B】 did/were ^④ were doing ^⑤	【-C】 did/were ^⑥ were to do ^⑦ should do ^⑧ should be doing ^⑨		
	主句			【-D】 would/should/could/might +have done/been doing ^⑩		
				【-E】 would/should/could/might + do/be doing ^⑪		

^① 如果省略的主语不是 you，则不是祈使句（[7.4 省略句](#)）。

(I) Hope everything is fine.

(I) Love you.

^② The Greek subjunctive mood is used almost exclusively in subordinate clauses.

(<https://www.etymonline.com/search?q=subjunctive>)

^③ 所谓 were 型虚拟语气，就是 am/is/are 的过去式不区分单复数统一变为 were，在现代英语中，虚拟语气有弱化的趋势，were 经常被 was 替代。所谓 be 型虚拟语气，则可以理解为(should) be ← shall be 省略了 should，是 should do ← shall do 在 be 动词上的具体运用。



真实	从句		【A】 did/was/were① have done/been① was/were doing② was/were to do③		【B】 do/be④ be doing⑤	【C】 do/be⑥ be to do⑦ shall do⑧ shall be doing⑨
	主句			【D1】 would/should/could/might + do/be doing⑩		【D2】 will/shall/can/may + have done⑩
						【E】 will/shall/can/may + do/be doing⑪

上图中，【A】 【B】 【C】 【D】 【E】 表示真实的情况，【-A】 【-B】 【-C】 【-D】 【-E】 表示虚拟的情况，【A】 对应【-A】，以此类推。可见从结构上来说，虚拟语气就是用动词的特定变形——将谓语动词的时态向过去推（过去 ← 现在 ← 将来）——以表示「虚」（假设）的语义。具体来说，可以改变第一个助动词，比如【A】 **had** done/been① ← did/was/were①、**have** done/been①，**had been** doing② ← **was/were** doing②。也可以改变结构后部，比如【图 A】 were to **have done**③ ← was/were to **do**③。其他的以此类推。

另外，【C】 do/be⑥ 来自于「主将从现」，即在条件状语从句中，以一般现在时表示将来，所以与表示正常一般现在时的【B】 do/be④ 并不相同。

1) 用于非真实条件句

第二、第三条件句共对应三种情况，分别虚拟过去事实、现在事实和将来预期。

1 与过去事实相反（第三条件句）

用途	设想与过去真实情况相反的情况，以及与真实结果相反的结果
结 从句	【-A】 had done/been、had been doing、were to have done
构 主语	【-D】 would/ should/ could / might + have done
例句	If anyone had told me three years ago that I would be spending most of my weekends camping, I would have laughed heartily. (2017 年高考) If that contagious cancer had popped up previously, it would have burned out in whatever region it started. (剑桥雅思 15) If the ices had been rapidly vaporized by an impacting object, the expanding gases might have helped the ejected fragments reach escape velocity. (GRE)

2 与现在事实相反（第二条件句结构 1）

用途	设想与现在真实情况相反的情况，以及与真实结果相反的结果
结 从句	【-B】 did/were/were doing
构 主语	【-E】 would/ should/ could / might + do/ be doing
例句	If she were carried down , it would be certain death. (2009 年高考) If Americans could only free themselves from their antigovernment doctrine, they would begin to see that the America' s problems are not insoluble. (2012 年 6 月六级一卷)



If a bowling ball **were orbiting** about the Sun in the asteroid belt, it **could have** a pebble orbiting it as far away as a few hundred radii (or about 50 meters) without losing the pebble to the Sun's gravitational pull. (LSAT)

③ 与将来预期相反（第二条件句结构 2）

用途	设想将来不大可能发生的情况及其结果
结 构	【-C】 did/were/should do/ should be doing/ were to do
从 句	【-E】 would/ should/ could / might + do/ be doing
例句	<p>If it were to rain tomorrow, the match would be put off. (2013 年专四)</p> <p>If real newspapers were to emerge from the public's demand for more and better coverage, it would have to come from a youthful generation of editors for whom <i>journalism was a totally absorbing profession, an exacting vocational ideal rather than a mere offshoot of job printing</i>. (2019 年专八)</p> <p>If there were a change in the atmosphere — for example, in the relative proportions of atmospheric gases — the climate would probably change also. (GRE)</p>

非真实条件句可以以含蓄的形式出现，此时主句仍然要遵循虚拟语气的用法。

But for the survival instinct which nearly all creatures have, more species **would have been** extinct from the earth. (2012 年 6 月六级一卷)

I don't think I **would have** ever **begun** this journey if it weren't for the recession. (2012 年专四)

The enormous diversity of life on Earth **could not have come about** without periodic extinctions that have conferred preeminence on one species at the expense of another. (LSAT)

部分虚拟语气从句部分可用倒装。

从句原结构	倒装形式	例句
If...had done/been...	Had...done/been...	<u>Had it not been</u> your advice, I would have made the wrong decision. (2016 年专四)
If...should do/be...	Should...do/be...	<u>Should</u> such imbalances continue , pessimists say, they could contribute to slower growth. (2011 年 12 月六级一卷) <u>Should</u> there be any questions, please don't hesitate to ask me.

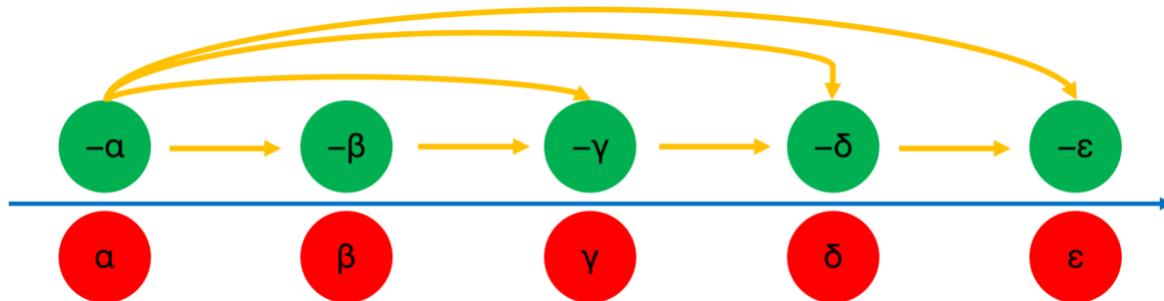


If...were... ^①	Were...	<p>Were Shakespeare to return today, he would be amazed to find his plays being studied in schools. (Macmillan Dictionary)</p>
---------------------------	---------	---

^① were 型虚拟语气较少用倒装，且从句中是人称代词做表语时，一般不用倒装，比如 If I were you... → ✗
Were I you....



另外，以上从句和主句的组合属于常见搭配形式，但是在实际语言使用中，只要语义合理，完全可以更灵活地搭配。设有真实事件 α 、 β 、 γ 、 δ 、 ε 按序发生且有顺序因果关系，对应的虚拟事件 $-\alpha$ 、 $-\beta$ 、 $-\gamma$ 、 $-\delta$ 、 $-\varepsilon$ 也按序发生且有顺序逻辑关系。一般情况下，可以构建「If $-\alpha$, then $-\beta$ 」「If $-\beta$, then $-\gamma$ 」...「If $-\delta$, then $-\varepsilon$ 」等虚拟语气。



但是在真实语言使用中，完全可以省略中间环节，直接用「If $-\alpha$, then $-\gamma$ 」「If $-\alpha$, then $-\delta$ 」「If $-\alpha$, then $-\varepsilon$ 」等虚拟语气。总之只要在日常语言逻辑中成立即可使用，从句与主句的搭配未必需要符合上述三种常见搭配。

【-B-D】 If there **were** periods of drought, any adaptations allowing the fish to survive the dry conditions **would have been** advantageous. (托福 TPO44)

【-A-E】 **Had it not been** for the attempted rescue mission, the hostages **might** still **be** alive. (2019 年专四)

甚至从句或主句可以不必都用虚拟的形式。

【-C C】 If anyone should ask for me, I'll be in the manager's office. (Cambridge)

【B-D】 The impact fractured the granite, and the Swedes believe that if oil **comes** from the mantle, it **could have risen** with methane gas through this now permeable rock. (LSAT)

2) 用于名词性从句

为表示建议、愿望、请求、命令、假设等，由 that 引导的名词性从句往往用虚拟语气，并与特定动词、名词或形容词搭配出现^①。在这些动词、名词、形容词中，部分具有同源性。

动词	advise	Your advice that she (should) wait till next week is reasonable.
名词	advice	
形容词	advisable	I thought it advisable that an armed guard (should) stand in readiness.
动词	command	
名词	command	He commanded that work should cease . (Oxford)
动词	decide	
名词	decision	The school board's decision was that the school (should) remain closed.
动词	decree	

^① 在现代英语中，虚拟语气有弱化的趋势，所以即便出现这些词，很多时候也不用虚拟语气。



名词	decree	The Olympic charter decrees that the Games be opened by a head of state. (Cambridge)
动词	demand	The police demanded that he give them the names. (Oxford)
名词	demand	
动词	insist	My family insisted that I should not give in , but stay and fight. (Collins)
名词	insistence	
动词	instruct	I instructed that she should be given hot, sweet tea. (Oxford)
名词	instruction	
动词	order	
名词	order	He ordered that all party property be confiscated . (Collins)
动词	propose	I proposed that we should retain a 51 per cent stake in the company. (Oxford)
名词	proposal	
动词	recommend	The report recommended that criminal charges be brought . (Oxford)
名词	recommendation	
动词	request	She had requested that the door to her room be left open. (Collins)
名词	request	
动词	require	
名词	requirement	The contract requires that we notify our sponsors of all changes in project specification. (Cambridge) It is a requirement that an announcement be made at each stage of any possible venture. (Cambridge)
动词	suggest	
名词	suggestion	I suggest that we wait a day or two. (Oxford)
动词	vote	I vote (that) we go to the cinema first and eat afterwards. (Cambridge)
动词	wish	I wish it weren't true. (Collins)
动词	suppose	I don't suppose (that) you could lend me £5 till tomorrow? (Cambridge)
动词	imagine	Just imagine everyone were to give up smoking.
动词	would rather	I'd rather you didn't tell him. (Oxford)
形容词	appropriate	It was appropriate that this tax (should) be abolished .
形容词	essential	It is essential that all the facts (should) be examined before any judgement is made.
形容词	fitting	It is fitting that we (should) remember those who died. (Cambridge)
形容词	imperative	It was imperative that he act as naturally as possible. (Collins)



形容词	important	It's important that you (should) tell the doctor all your symptoms. (Cambridge)
形容词	necessary	It is absolutely necessary that he (should) come back without delay.
形容词	vital	It's vital that you (should) respond at once. (Cambridge)

3) 其他用法

① 用于其他从句

其他从句中用到假设意义时，也可以用虚拟语气。

引导词/结构	例句
as if/though	As if you needed another reason to hate the gym, it now turns out that exercise can exhaust not only your muscles, but also your eyes. (2017年6月四级二卷) Meanwhile, Europe has fallen prey to a different ideological trap: the belief that European governments would always have infinite resources and could continue borrowing as if there were no tomorrow. (2012年6月六级一卷)
if only	If only I had listened to you. (Oxford)
lest	He spent whole days in his room, wearing headphones lest he disturb anyone. (Oxford)
whether	They need an adult whether it be a parent or teacher. (Oxford)
it is time that...	It is (high) time America made comprehensive immigration reforms. (2014年6月六级三卷)

② 习惯用法

表示祝愿、诅咒、震惊等语气的习惯用法，往往用虚拟语气。

Long **live** our friendship! 友谊万岁！

God **bless** you. (Oxford) 上帝保佑。

God/Heaven **forbid**. (Oxford) 天理不容！/但愿上帝/老天别让这样的事情发生！

So **be** it. (Oxford) 那就这样吧！

Devil **take** him. 天杀的。

Suffice (it) to say that... (Oxford) 只需说...

I'll work from morning till night **if need be**. (Oxford) 如有需要

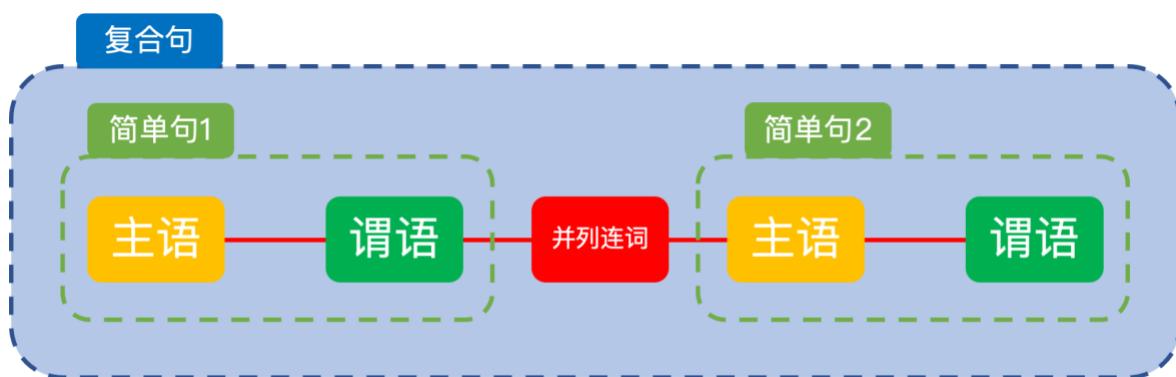
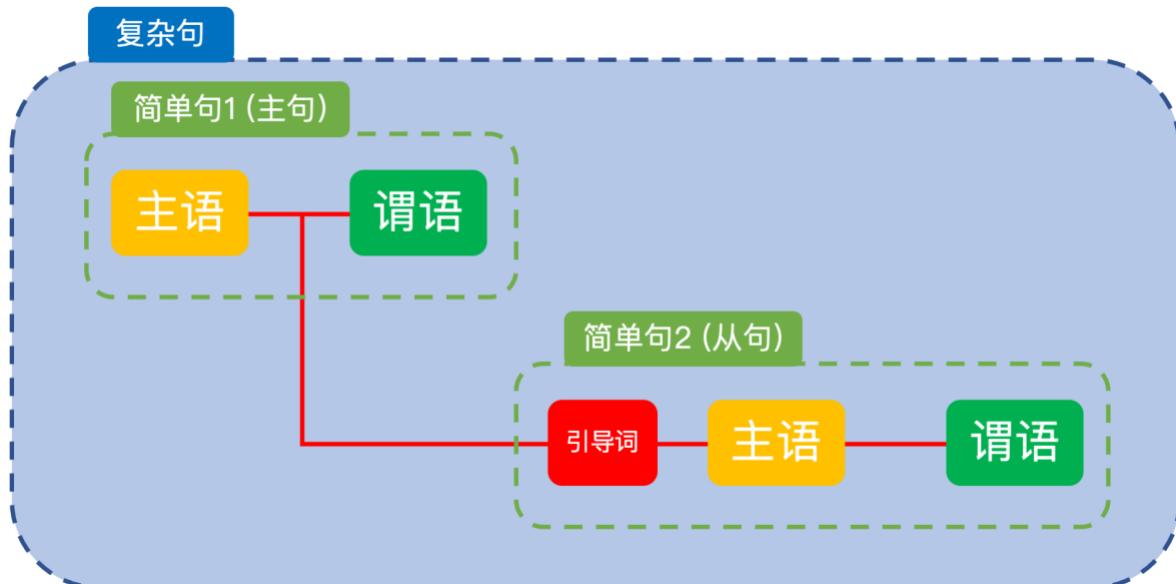
Oh that I could fly! (Oxford) 如果...就好了

Would that he **had lived** to finish it. 但愿/如果...就好了



第六章 简单句

英语中将句子分为简单句、复合句和复杂句，复合句和复杂句都包含至少两套主谓，简单句即只包含了一套主谓结构的句子。



6.1 基本句型

英语中有五种基本句型^①，由核心成分（主语、谓语动词、宾语、补语）构成。

^① 有少数句子用五种基本句型不便解释。

I live **in Shanghai**. 我住在上海。 ≠ I live. 我活着。

He treated her **respectfully**. 他尊敬地对待她。 ≠ He treated her. 他款待了她。

上两句中的 **in Shanghai** 和 **respectfully** 不可省略，有如下可能解释：

- ① 认为有七种基本句型，除五种基本句型外，再加 ⑥主谓状SVA 和 ⑦主谓宾状SVOA，分别对应上两句。
- ② 将 live in、treat...respectfully 视为短语动词（[5.1.2-2 短语动词](#)），将上两句都视为主谓宾SVO句型。
- ③ 将 in Shanghai 视为 live 的动词补语，将 respectfully 视为 treat 的动词补语（[6.2.2 补语](#)）。



6.1.1 主谓 SV

谓语动词由不及物动词 (intransitive verb, 简称 Vi) 或不及物动词词组充当。

Birds fly.

On public holidays, generally a Sunday timetable **operates**. (2020 年高考)

Most kids **grow up** learning they cannot draw on the walls. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)

They **traveled, studied, worked, wrote** for publication, and by their activities challenged the stereotype of the passive woman. (GRE)

SVi[A]

有一种句式结构特殊，语法分析上存在争议。

She **sat** 「very still」, her eyes closed. (Oxford)

以上句为例，谓语动词 sat 既表示「She sat」的行为，是不及物动词；又后接形容词 still 表示主语的状态，用法类似系动词。所以，部分语法学家将这一类动词称为「双谓语系动词」(double predicate copula)，将这类句式视为一种特殊的主系表句型，可以称为「SViCs」句型。

但是，形容词 still 也可以视为形容词做状语，修饰动词 sat 的方式，而且省略该形容词 still，句子仍然成立，且核心句意不变。所以，部分语法学家将这一类句型视为「主谓 SV」句型。本书从「状语可以省略，补语不可省略」的原则出发，赞同第二种分析，以 SVi[A]标记此类句型，其中的状语 A 可能是形容词、非谓语动词、名词/名词词组、名词性从句等。

As I **sat** [blocked and clueless]_{形容词} for two solid days, I momentarily wondered if I couldn't just call an expert on the subject matter which I was tackling, or someone who took the class previously, to get me going. (2017 年 12 四级一卷)

He **came** home [exhausted]_{非谓语动词/形容词}.

He **lived** [a hero]_{名词词组} and **died** [a martyr]_{名词词组}.

He **returned** home [what he had always been]_{名词性从句}.

6.1.2 主谓宾 SVO

谓语动词由及物的动词 (transitive verb, 简称 Vt) 或动词词组充当，必须加宾语。

I love you.

Recent studies **have found** positive effects. (2020 年高考)

Ben Franklin, one of America's founding fathers, **didn't just invent** the lightning rod. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)

Currently available evidence, however, **offers** more support for a new theory, the volcanic-eruption theory. (LSAT)

其他一些结构也可以整体视为及物动词。



1) 半助动词 + 实义动词

半助动词往往由多个词组成，但是「半助动词 + 实义动词」可以完整理解为谓语动词（[5.1.1-3 半助动词](#)）。

It's less likely to cause knee injuries. (2020 年高考)

We are all going to learn about X, Y, and Z. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)

No nineteenth-century woman dared to describe childbirth, much less her sexual passion. (GMAT)

2) Vi + P = Vt

动词词组可能以及物动词为核心，也可能以不及物动词为核心（[5.1.2 实义动词](#)）。以不及物动词为核心的动词词组，如果以介词结尾，则可以整体视为及物的动词词组，可以用公式表示为：**Vi + P = Vt**。

Lighting accounts for about 7% of the total electricity consumed in the US. (2020 年高考)

The study **looked at** computer-assisted cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) and found that it was no more effective in treating depression than the usual care patients receive from a primary care doctor. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)

Wagner's Modern Architecture called for a new style based on modern technologies and models of construction. (LSAT)

3) 复杂结构整体视为谓语动词

在实用语法中，可以将复杂结构整体视为谓语动词，整个句子分析为主谓宾句型。

The engineers are also trying to develop an on and off "switch" where the glow would fade when exposed to daylight. (2020 年高考)

Teachers should **aim to build** a supportive, creative environment for students to do this work. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)

In physics, subject and object **were supposed to be** entirely distinct, so that a description of any part of the universe would be independent of the observer. (GRE)

6.1.3 主谓双宾 SVoO

谓语动词由双及物动词（double transitive verb，简称 Vd）充当，必须先加间接宾语（indirect object，简称 o），再加直接宾语（direct object，简称 O）^①。常见双及物动词包括 give、teach、buy、lend、find、hand、leave、sell、show、read、pay、make、offer、build、pass、bring 等。

He sent {her}间接宾语 {a nice little note }直接宾语. (Oxford)

^① 直接宾语是动作的直接承受对象，间接宾语则往往只是宾语的传递方向或动作的受益方。



With a little care and by following the suggestions given above, you can give {the released fish} 间接宾语 {a better chance of survival} 直接宾语. (2008 年高考)

The program will offer patients 间接宾语 {several bags of food prescribed for their condition} 直接宾语, along with intensive training in how to cook it. (2018 年 12 月四级一卷)

SVoO → SVO + Po

SVoO 一般可以改为「SVO + Po」的结构，这个介词一般用 to 或 for，具体选择视句意而定。但是，变形后的句子不再是 SVoO 句型，而是「SVO + 介宾短语做状语」，归于主谓宾 SVO 句型。

With a little care and by following the suggestions given above, you can give a better chance of survival to the released fish. (→ 2008 年高考)

The program will offer several bags of food prescribed for their condition to patients, along with intensive training in how to cook it. (→ 2018 年 12 月四级一卷)

The close correspondence between the observed properties of gallium and Mendeleyev's predictions for eka-aluminum lent strong support to the periodic law. (托福 TPO16)

6.1.4 主谓宾宾补 SVOC

如果主谓宾 SVO 句型不能达成基本句意，必须对宾语进行进一步补充，则用主谓宾宾补 SVOC 句型。宾语补语 C 的逻辑主语是宾语 O，二者之间满足「O be C」的关系。如果要明确表示这个句型中的宾语是宾语的补语，C 也可以用 Co 表示。

常用「主谓宾宾补 SVOC」句型的动词包括：advise、allow、appoint、ask、beat、call、catch、cause、choose、consider、count、cut、deem、dye、elect、enable、encourage、expect、feel、find、force、get、have、hear、invite、keep、leave、like、listen to、look at、make、name、notice、observe、order、paint、permit、persuade、prove、regard、request、require、see、set、smell、start、tell、think、want、wash、watch、wipe、wish。

宾补		例句
名词		We'll make London 宾语 <our base> 宾补. (Oxford) Her name is Elizabeth, but everybody calls her <Liz>. (Oxford) They named the baby Andrew. (Oxford)
形容词		You can leave {the door} 宾语 <open> 宾补. (Oxford) People sometimes set {a fish} <free> after catching it. (2008 年高考) Which of the following will probably make {a fish} <ill>? (2008 年高考) It also made {the whole business of making and owning images} <democratic>. (托福 TPO22)
非谓	不定式 to do	Some positions require students 宾语 <to be 15 to 24 or up to 29 for persons with a disability> 宾补. (2019 年高考)



语动词		My belief is that the goal of making is not to get every kid to be hands-on, but it enables us <to be good learners> . (2019年6月四级三卷) A survey conducted for BuzzFeed News found {44 percent of Facebook users} <rarely or never trust news from the media giant> . (2018年考研一)
现在分词 doing		I have kept her 宾语 < waiting too long>宾补. (Oxford) Friday evening found him < lying drunk on the floor>. (Oxford) I suddenly heard {an elephant} < crying > as though frightened. (2009年高考)
过去分词 done		He ordered {the anchor} 宾语 < dropped >宾补. (Oxford) The Saharan people left {a remarkable record of their lives} < painted on the walls of caves deep in the desert >. (托福TPO28) For example, Alpers asserts that Rembrandt deliberately left {his works} < unfinished > so as to get more money for their revision and completion. (LSAT)
介宾短语		They can count it 宾语 < as a success >宾补. (Collins) They have painted {half of the cows} < with eyes > and left {the other half} < as normal >. (2018年12月六级三卷) Second, an overemphasis on the influence of one essay has kept historians <from noting other correspondences between King's philosophy and transcendentalism> . (LSAT)

SVoO vs SVOC

如果 SVOC 的 C 是名词性成分，则易与 SVoO 混淆。

① SVOC → O be C 成句（如果 O 是宾格代词，需还原为对应主格），而 SVoO 无此规律。

You can leave the door open. (Oxford) → The door is open. ✓

They named the baby Andrew. (Oxford) → The baby is Andrew. ✓

He sent her a nice little note. (Oxford) → She(her) is a a nice little note. ✗

She gave him presents and clothes. (Oxford) → He(him) is presents and clothes. ✗

② SVoO → SVO + PO. 成句，而 SVOC 一般无此规律^①。

He sent her a nice little note. (Oxford) → He sent a nice little note **to her**. ✓

He bought me a new dress. (Oxford) → He bought a new dress **for me**. ✓

You can leave the door open. (Oxford) → You can leave open **for the door**. ✗

They named the baby Andrew. (Oxford) → They named Andrew **to the baby**. ✗

^① 此方法并不绝对有效，SVOC 也可能有此变形，比如 I made him a solider. → I made a soldier **out of** him.





6.1.5 主谓补 SVC ★★★

补语是句子的核心成分，一般不可省略，否则语法不成立或句意发生重大改变。传统语法往往只讲表语和宾语补语，对应主系表 SV_LCs 和主谓宾宾补 SVOC 两种涉及补语的句型，但是除了表语外还有其他类型的主语补语，这类句型统称主谓补 SVC。

1) 主系表 SV_LCs

系动词全称连系动词 (copula 或 linking verb)，顾名思义系动词不表示具体动作，仅仅连接主语和表语。系动词后接成分描述主语特点和性质，称表语，标记为 Cs。主系表 SV_LCs 主要以系动词区分。

① 表状态

系动词	例句
be	<p>she is <an Italian>. (Oxford)</p> <p>Race walkers are <conditioned athletes>. (2020 年高考)</p> <p>Learning by doing may not be <efficient>, but it is <effective>. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)</p>
feel ^①	<p>It seems people feel <more relaxed> around pets, says Allen, who thinks it may be because pets don't judge. (2010 年高考)</p> <p>In musical expression, he did not feel <restrained by the weight of convention>. (2014 年考研一)</p> <p>The conquest was followed by a building boom, and enough villas and temples in the Italian style were built that a visitor from Rome would have felt <quite at home> in post-conquest Britain. (托福 TPO47)</p>
look	<p>You look <a complete idiot> in that hat. (Oxford)</p> <p>His attitude to state intervention has looked <confused> ever since his bizarre 2006 lament that chocolate oranges placed seductively at supermarket checkouts fueled obesity. (2020 年 7 月六级一卷)</p> <p>As soon as I arrived I made an attempt to find my host but the two or three people of whom I asked his whereabouts stared at me in such an amazed way and denied so vehemently any knowledge of his movements that I slunk off in the direction of the cocktail table — the only place in the garden where a single man could linger without looking <purposeless and alone>. (2016 年专八)</p>
sound	<p>The cat sounded <hurt>. (Oxford)</p> <p>While they sound <efficient and cost-saving>, a recent study reports that they are not effective, primarily because depressed patients are not likely to engage with them or stick with them. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)</p>

^① 这些词又被称为感官动词，表示的都是人的主观感受。



	With the soprano's piping sound, ideas that had sounded <dark and brooding> acquired a feeling of giddy fantasy. (GRE)
taste	The wine tastes <sour>. (Oxford) They taste <like apples>. (2017年6月四级二卷) The food tastes <better> — it's fresher and organic — and the garden handily fulfills its original purpose. (2012年专四)
smell	The room smelled <of lemons>. (Collins) The whole thing is beginning to smell <very fishy>. (Oxford) Cordia Harrington was tired of standing up all day and smelling <like French fries> at night. (2011年专四)
seem	It seems <ages> since we got here. (Oxford) To everyone who knew them, they seemed <an ideal couple>. (Collins) At the next election none of the big parties seem <likely to endorse this sentiment>. (2016年考研一)
appear	You appear <rather sad>. (Oxford) The presidency is beginning to appear <a political irrelevance>. (Collins) Under stress these people will appear <to be superficial, over-eager and manipulative>. (Collins)

② 表状态改变

系动词	例句
become	She is becoming <very hard of hearing>. (Oxford) With its focus divided, the lion becomes <confused and is unsure about what to do next>. (2014年高考) Automation means that initiatives for car-sharing become <much more viable>, particularly in urban areas with significant travel demand. (剑桥雅思 15)
grow	The weather is growing <hot>. (Oxford) I grew <a little afraid of the guy next door>. (Collins) As it grew <more popular>, the company sold rights to bottle the soda, so it could travel easily. (2017年12月六级一卷)
get	From here on, it can only get <better>. (Collins) Even more alarming is the fact that they appear to be getting <stronger>. (托福 TPO43) Wherever the crime novels of P. D. James are discussed by critics, there is a tendency on the one hand to exaggerate her merits and on the



	other to castigate her as a genre writer who is getting <above herself>. (LSAT)
go	He's gone <crazy>. (Oxford) You'd better serve it to them before it goes <cold>. (Collins) Although these same methods still lead to an occasional discovery, most deposits not yet discovered have gone <undetected> because they are buried and have no surface expression. (GMAT)
turn	She turned <pale>. (Oxford) She suddenly turned <all sweet and charming>. (Oxford) She announced that she was going to turn <professional>. (Collins)
fall	She fell <pregnant> last May. (Oxford) Dr. Sasaki found, as expected, the participants slept less well on their first night than they did on their second, taking more than twice as long to fall <asleep> and sleeping less overall. (2017 年 12 四级一卷) It fell <short of the latter's expectations>. (2018 年考研一)

3 表状态保持

系动词	例句
remain	Her question remains <unanswered>. (Oxford) Citizens still have a right to expect private documents to remain <private and protected by the Constitution's prohibition on unreasonable searches>. (2015 年考研一) Pheidole dentata ants are the only known animals which remain <active> for almost their whole lives. (剑桥雅思 14)
stay	Stay <hungry>, stay <foolish>. — Steve Jobs If your child talks on the family's telephone for too long, tell him he can talk for 15 minutes, but then he must stay <off the phone> for at least an equal period of time. (2009 年高考) He sleeps for an hour, dresses, goes out again and stays <out> until late at night. (2011 年专八)
keep	Keep <Calm> and Carry On  I kept <quiet> while Emily talked on. (Oxford) For several years I kept <in touch with her>. (Collins)

4 表状态终止

系动词	例句
prove	Grass-fed products have proved <to be healthier and more nutritious>. (2019 年 12 月六级三卷)



	<p>It is the use of horses for transportation and warfare that explains why Inner Eurasian pastoralism proved <the most mobile and the most militaristic of all major forms of pastoralism>. (托福 TPO14)</p> <p>On the whole, these defenses have worked reasonably well. For all the talk about the risk of a "cyber 9/11", the internet has proved <remarkably resilient>. (2016 年专八)</p>
turn out	<p>It turns out <to be an enjoyable way of learning>. (2018 年 12 四级一卷)</p> <p>The move turned out <to be foresighted>. (2016 年考研)</p> <p>The answer, it would appear, is fear — blood-thirsty and gruesome aspects of the story, such as the eating of the grandmother by the wolf, turned out <to be the best preserved of all>. (剑桥雅思 15)</p>

2) S be done Cs

主谓宾宾补 SVOC 的被动语态形式是「O be done C」，由于原句的宾语是新句的主语，所以新句可表示为「S be done Cs」，Cs 即主语补语^①，可能是形容词、名词/名词词组、介宾短语、非谓语动词等。

He was called <**outrageous**>形容词.

The ship was named <**Elizabeth**>名词.

His answer is deemed <**off the point**>介宾短语.

Since it was our turn next, we were left <**wondering what scene would be prepared for us**>非谓语动词. (2012 年高考)

This upsets me to no end because while all the experts are busy debating about which option is best, the people who want to improve their lives are left <**confused by all of the conflicting information**>非谓语动词. (2014 年高考)

Traditional CBT is considered <**an effective form of talk therapy for depression**>名词词组, helping people challenge negative thoughts and change the way they think in order to change their mood and behaviors. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)

3) Vi + PO

主谓 SVi 如果要加宾语，需要在 SVi 后先加介词再加宾语，即「SVi + PO」。可以将「Vi + P」视为及物的动词词组，整个句子视为主谓宾 SVO 句型 ([6.1.2-2 Vi+P=Vt](#))，也可以将介宾短语理解为动词 Vi 的补语 Cv^②。

I live 不及物动词 <**in Shanghai**>补语. I 「live in」 及物动词词组 Shanghai.

He looked 不及物动词 <**after me**>补语. He 「looked after」 及物动词词组 me.

^① 并非「S + be done」后的所有成分都是补语，比如 He was bitten by a dog. 其中 by a dog 就是介宾短语做状语。

^② 并非所有「SVi + PO」都可以这么理解，比如 Birds fly in the sky. 中的 in the sky 是介宾短语做状语。



The literary salons provided a sounding board for French and English women who called <for access to all the educational institutions in their societies> on an equal basis with men. (GRE)

6.2 语法成分

语法成分	英文名称	类别			说明			
句内成分	句子级成分	X	短语级成分	核心成分	5.1 谓语动词			
					第四章 主语			
	独立成分	X	短语级成分		6.1.2 主谓宾 SVO			
					6.1.4 主谓宾宾补 SVOC			
	非核心成分	X	独立成分		6.1.5 主谓补 SVC			
					6.2.3 状语			
					4.1.2 定语			
	同位语	X			6.2.4 同位语			
呼唤语	appellation /vocative	独立成分						
感叹语	interjection /exclamation							
插入语	parenthesis							

语法成分体现语法的层次性^①，首先可分为句内成分^②和独立成分。一般所说的「语法成分」指的是句内成分，包括主语、谓语（动词）、宾语、补语、定语、状语、同位语等7种。独立成分即独立于句子成分之外的成分，包括呼唤语、感叹语、插入语（狭义）等3种，去掉之后句子仍然成立。

独立成分	例句
呼唤语	Mom , I'm home.
	Hey dude , what's up? (Oxford)
	Ladies and gentlemen , let me introduce myself. (Oxford)
感叹语	Hallelujah .
	Wow , that's great!

^① 严格来说，语法层次包括词素、词、词组、分句、句子等5个层次。词素（morpheme）是最小的语法和语义单位；一个或一个以上的词素构成词（word），比如 *kindness* = *kind* 词素 + *ness* 词素；一个或一个以上的词构成词组（phrase），比如 *a big red apple* ；一个或一个以上的词组构成分句（clause），比如各种基本句型、从句都是分句；一个或一个以上的分句构成句子（sentence），句子是最高一级的语法单位。但是，实用语法分析侧重连词成句的规则，所以一般不涉及词素分析，词和词组笼统视为一个级别，分句和句子笼统视为一个级别。

^② 通常说的句子成分指句内成分，包括主语、谓语动词、宾语、补语、定语、状语、同位语等7种，比如第一章讲的「非谓语动词可以做除谓语动词外的所有语法成分」指的就是非谓语动词可以做主语、宾语、补语、定语、状语、同位语等6种句内成分。另外，非谓语动词不可做呼唤语和感叹语，但是可以做插入语（[1.3 插入语](#)）。



	Oh no, look at this! (Oxford)
插入语（狭义） ^①	The horse is situated 2.5 km from Uffington village on a steep slope close to the Late Bronze Age (c. 7th century BCE) hillfort of Uffington Castle and below the Ridgeway, a long-distance Neolithic track. (剑桥雅思 16)

句内成分又可以分为句子级成分和短语级成分，二者存在重叠。句子级成分即直接构成句子的成分，包括主语、谓语（动词）、宾语、补语、状语等 5 种；短语级成分即构成短语的成分，包括主语、宾语、补语、定语、状语、同位语等 6 种。

语法成分	短语级成分用法	例句
主语	独立主格	When the students came in, {{ sharpened pencils } 独立主语 in hand } 独立主格, there was not a blue book in sight. (2017 年 12 月四级一卷)
	逻辑主语	Which of the following will probably make { a fish } 宾语 ill 宾补? (2008 年高考) (a fish 是 ill 的逻辑主语) It's awfully nice of you to <u>come</u> all this way to see me. (Collins) (you 是 come 的逻辑主语)
宾语	动宾搭配	If I've had 动词 { a stressful day } 宾语 I love to chill out and 「listen to」 动词 music 宾语. (Oxford) (listen to 可以整体视为一个及物动词)
	介宾短语	The people shouted [with 介词 pleasure 宾语] 介宾短语-状语. (Oxford)
补语	动词补语	When I <u>put</u> < down > ^② the phone, my savings were gone. (2013 年专四)
	形容词补语	They are happy 形容词 <to see me doing well> 补语 ^③ . (Oxford)
定语	名词词组	According to { recent 定语 studies} 名词词组, the answer is { a big 定语 YES} 名词词组, if {the air 定语 quality} 名词词组 in {your camping 定语 area} 名词词组 is good. (2019 年高考)
状语	形容词词组	And the quit rates were 「 particularly 状语 convincing 」 形容词词组 given that before the study started, most of the people had said they'd rather cut down gradually before quitting. (2017 年 6 月四级二卷)

^① 从长难句分析的实用角度出发，本书将插入语的概念扩大，泛指所有具有插入语形式特征（往往以逗号、破折号、括号等与句子主干隔开）的成分，之后再具体分析其语法成分（可能是定语、状语、同位语等，也可能是狭义的插入语 [1.3 插入语](#)）。

^② 传统语法认为 down 属于不可省略的状语，部分传统语法学家将这类句子列为「主谓宾状 SVOA」基本句型。但是，如果删除 down 剩下的 put the phone 句子不成立，所以本书主张将 down 视为动词 put 的补语。

^③ 如果删去 to help 剩下的 I'm happy 句子仍然成立，但与原句语义大变，所以 to help 在原句中不可省略。从语法分析的角度，happy 是 I 的表语，to help 又是 happy 的补语，可见补语本身还可以再带补语。再比如 I am happy to be here. 一共套用了三层补语，但是从层次性的角度分析，整句仍然是主系表句型。



	副词词组	His <i>Seven Habits of Highly Effective People</i> became a popular bestseller [very 状语 quickly]副词词组. (2011 年 12 月六级一卷)
	介宾短语	The mummy was found lying [right 状语 inside the stone coffin]介宾短语. (2012 年专四)
同位语	同位语	<u>Chelsea Rochman, an ecologist at the University California Davis,</u> has been trying to answer a dismal question: Is everything terrible, or are things just very, very bad? (剑桥雅思 14)

按其对于句子成立的必要程度，语法成分又可以分为核心成分和非核心成分。核心成分即形成句子主干的成分^①，是句子传达基本句意所必须的成分，一般不可省略。省略了则句子在语法上不成立，或基本句意发生重大变化。

① 语法错误：I like **music** 宾语. ≠ I like.

② 句意大变：I found it **amazing** 补语. ≠ I found it.

非核心成分只起修饰或补充说明的作用，省略后虽然句意不如原句丰富、细致，但是语法上仍然成立，基本句意也不受影响。

She is the (**most beautiful**)定语 woman (**I know**)定语. (Oxford)

The essay was [**beautifully**]状语 written. (Oxford)

It's a (**fascinating**)定语 topic and Yong, {**a young British science journalist**}同位语, is an ([**extraordinarily**]状语 **adept**)定语 guide. (剑桥雅思 16)

{**Hey dude**}呼喚語, what's up? (Oxford)

{**Wow**}感叹語, that's great!

The horse is situated 2.5 km from Uffington village on a (**steep**)定语 slope close to the Late Bronze Age (c. 7th century BCE)插入语 hillfort of Uffington Castle and below the Ridgeway, a (**long-distance**)定语 (**Neolithic**)定语 track. (剑桥雅思 16)

6.2.1 宾语

宾语 (object) 即动作的承受者。按照接续方法，可以分为动词宾语和介词宾语 (6.3.3 介词)。

可能构成	例句
名词/名词词组	We love Mexican churros , so I buy them on my phone from my local Mexican takeaway restaurant . (2018 年高考)
宾格代词	Experts say more hospitals are likely to invest in telemedicine systems as they move away from fee-for-service payment and into managed-

^① 做更低层次的语法成分时，主语、宾语、补语也是核心成分，一般不可省略。

① [**Weather** 主语 permitting]独立主格, we can go on an excursion today. 独立主格中的逻辑主语不可省略。

② I love you **with**介词 {**all my heart**}宾语. 介宾短语中的宾语不可省略。

③ I'm **happy**形容词 <**to help**>补语. 形容词补语不可省略，本句中省略to help虽然句子仍然成立，但是句意相较于原句有重大改变。



	care-type contracts that give them a set fee to provide care for patients and allow them to keep any savings they achieve. (2020年9月六级二卷)
不定式	Ellen Marram quit as chief of Tropicana a decade ago, saying she wanted to be a CEO . (2011年考研一)
动名词	Why do many people today keep { buying things } which they do not need? (剑桥雅思15)
宾语从句	He theorizes that it is the emotional component of these intangible prizes that make them effective . (2016年12月四级三卷)
名词化结构	Which of the following words can NOT be used to complete " We've seen the film ___ "? (2010年专四)

形式宾语与逻辑宾语

为了满足接续要求（比如介词、部分动词不可后接 that 宾语从句），也尽快突显整句句型，常用代词 it 做形式宾语，而将实质的宾语后置于句末，称为逻辑宾语。一般来说，不可用逻辑宾语替换形式宾语，否则会造成语法不通或歧义。

逻辑主语	例句
不定式 to do	Young adults with a college degree found it easier to live independently of their parents . (2019年6月四级二卷)
动名词 doing	I think it no need talking about it with them.
that 从句	They found it pleasant that they worked with us Chinese. I don't like it that he's so lazy. You may depend on it that we shall always help you. We owe it to you that there wasn't a serious accident.
其他	I hate it when people complain . (Oxford)

6.2.2 补语 ★★★

补语 (complement) 又称补足语，传统语法往往只讲表语和宾语补语，对应主系表 SV_LCs 和主谓宾宾补 SVOC 两种涉及补语的句型，但是除了表语外还有其他类型的主语补语。此外还有动词补语和形容词补语。在语法分析时，补语一般用 < > 框定。

补语	说明/例句
主语 表语	6.1.5-1 主系表 SV_LCs
补语 其他	6.1.5-2 S be done Cs
宾语补语	6.1.4 主谓宾宾补 SVOC
动词补语	I <u>live</u> <in Shanghai>. (6.1.5-3 SVi + PO)



	<p>After a fruitless morning sitting at his desk he <u>had given</u> <up>. (Collins)</p> <p>(5.1.2-2 短语动词)</p> <p>He <u>treated</u> her <with grave courtesy>^①. (Oxford)</p> <p>Leaphorn <u>put</u> the photograph <on the desk>^①. (Collins)</p>
形容词补语	<p>I'd be <u>happy</u> <to show you around>. (Collins)</p> <p>We're just <u>happy</u> <that he's still alive>^②. (Oxford)</p>

可以做补语的结构如下。

可能构成		例句
名词		The London Gazette was < the first newspaper > to set aside a place just for advertising. (2011 年高考)
形容词		The practice of taxing alcohol and tobacco has proved both < popular and profitable >. (2016 年 12 月二卷)
介宾短语		Conflict is < on the menu > tonight at the café La Chope. (2015 年高考)
非谓语动词	不定式 to do	One free social networking website turned out < to be successful > because it limited each posting to one hundred and forty characters. (2013 年 12 月六级二卷)
	动名词 doing	A classic example is < noisy begging by nestling songbirds> when a parent returns to the nest with food. (托福 TPO11)
	现在分词 doing	They then heard a woman's voice < coming from the wrecked vehicle>. (2016 年高考)
	过去分词 done	What is one set of conditions under which a small business might find itself financially < overextended >? (GMAT)
名词性从句		<p>He put the blame <where it belongs>. (Collins)</p> <p>She was glad <u>that</u> people can have a chance to see the treasure. (2017 年专四)</p>

6.2.3 状语

状语 (adverbial) 修饰动词、形容词、副词、介宾短语等，一般为副词、介宾短语 ([6.3.3 介词](#))、非谓语动词 ([1.1.1 非谓语动词做状语](#))、状语从句 ([2.3 状语从句](#)) 等，但是名词、形容词也能做状语。在语法分析时，状语一般用 [] 框定。

可能构成		例句
副词		There are three books I reread annually . (2020 年高考)

^① 传统语法认为是状语，则应视这种状语为不可省略的状语，且应增加主谓宾状 SVOA 的基本句型 ([6.1 基本句型](#))。

^② 传统语法认为是形容词宾语从句，但是形容词一般不具备动作性，这种分析不便于理解，所以本书将其视为补语。



介宾短语		In an office , there are so many potential distractions, with people knocking on the door or customers stopping in ^① . (2014 年专八)
非谓语动词	不定式 to do	While Queensland Rail makes every effort to ensure trains run as scheduled , there can be no guarantee of connections between trains or between train services and bus services. (2020 年高考)
	现在分词 doing	A town of culture award could, it is argued, become an annual event, attracting funding and creating jobs . (2020 年考研一)
	过去分词 done	Designed by Supervising Architect of the Treasury, Alfred B. Mullett, it was built from 1871 to 1888 to house the growing staffs of the State, War, and Navy Departments, and is considered one of the best examples of French Second Empire architecture in the country. (2018 年考研一)
状语从句		Although surveys reveal the IDP process to be useful, trainees report a need for additional resources to help them identify a long-term career path and complete an IDP. (2013 年 12 月六级一卷)
名词		I play tennis three times a week . (Oxford)
形容词		She returned home, exhausted from work. (Oxford)

定语 vs 状语 vs 补语 ★★★

在具体的句子中，定语、状语、补语的划分可能存在争议。比如，下例中的介宾短语 **on the street** 是做 **a man** 的后置定语，还是谓语动词 **saw** 的地点状语？**exhausted** 是做主语 **She** 的定语，还是整个句子的状语？

I saw a man **on the street**.

She returned home, **exhausted** from work. (Oxford)

在具体的语法分析中，主谓宾往往比较容易判断，同位语出现频率相对较低，而定状补则出现频率高且难以区分。可以根据定状补不同的性质总结方法进行判断，比如省略法和移动法。

① **省略法：** 补语不可省略，定状可以省略

因为补语是句子核心成分，不可省略，而定语、状语是非核心成分，可以省略，所以可以用省略法判断某个结构是补语还是定语或状语。

Some positions require students <**to be 15 to 24 or up to 29 for persons with a disability**>. (2019 年高考) → Some positions require students. X 省略宾补后，语法上缺少成分，语义上不通。

A (**build-it-yourself**) solar still is one of the (**best**) ways to obtain (**drinking**) water in areas (**where the liquid is not readily available**). (2017 年高考) → A solar still is one of the ways to obtain water in areas. ✓ 省略各种定语后，句子仍然成立且核心句意不变（当然，句意没有原句清晰饱满）。

^① 此处的 **with people knocking on the door or customers stopping in** 也可以视为 **with** 型独立主格，但是 **with/without** 型独立主格本身也是一种介宾短语做状语（[1.2-3 with/without 型独立主格](#)）。



Human drivers become [easily] distracted or tired [while driving]. (2017年6月四级二卷) → Human drivers become distracted or tired. ✓ 省略各种状语后，句子仍然成立且核心句意不变（当然，句意没有原句清晰饱满）

② 移动法：状语可以移动，定补不可移动

一般而言，状语在句子中的位置比较灵活，可以置于句首、句中或句末，而定语则一般位于它所修饰的名词前后，补语也有相对固定的位置，所以可以用移动法判断某个结构是状语还是定语或补语。

[In the last decade or so], advances in technology have allowed mass-market labels such as Zara, H&M, and Uniqlo to react to trends [more quickly] and anticipate demand [more precisely]. (2013年考研一) → Advances in technology have allowed mass-market labels such as Zara, H&M, and Uniqlo to [more quickly] react to trends and [more precisely] anticipate demand, [in the last decade or so]. ✓ 调整状语的顺序后，句子仍然成立，语义不变。

Djoser was the (first) king (of the (Third) Dynasty (of Epygt)) and the first to build in stone. (剑桥雅思 16) → Djoser was **of the of Epygt Dynasty Third the king first** and the first to build in stone. ✗ 调整定语顺序后（前置定语和后置定语对调），句子错误。

They have painted half of the cows <with eyes> and left the other half <as normal>. (2018年12月六级三卷) → They have painted **with eyes** half of the cows and left **as normal** the other half. ✗ 调整宾补顺序后（宾语和宾补位置对调），句子错误^①。

6.2.4 同位语

同位语 (appositive) 意即“并列”，在语法上一般指所指相同、作用相同的两个结构并列，一般是名词性成分。在语法分析时，同位语一般用{}框定。

可能构成	例句
名词/名词词组	{A male bear called GoGo in Tennoji Zoo}, <u>Osaka</u> , has even been observed making use of a tool to manipulate his environment. (剑桥雅思 16) Although parenting experts have questioned the value of educational games — as <u>Jim Taylor</u> , {author of Raising Generation Tech }, puts it, "they're a load of crap...meant to make money" — no studies have shown they can add real value. (SAT)
名词性从句	The problem, <u>that you did not pick up the packages</u> , delays the entire production schedule.

^① 如果宾语特别长，可以将宾语后置（[7.2.3-2 冗长成分后置](#)），形成「主谓宾补宾 SVCO」的形式，但是这种用法仅限于宾语超长的特殊情况。



	<p>It is utterly confusing to me that people do not recognize this, despite <u>the fact that</u> pretty much anyone who has been a student can tell the difference between their best and worst teachers. (2016年12月四级三卷)</p>
非谓语动词	<p>Your idea, for Olive to make more pickles, appears ill-conceived. 🌐</p> <p>Psychology, studying the human mind, has become a popular major at university recently. 🌐</p> <p>The real issue, {workers working way too long} 独立主格, remain unheeded after the negotiation between the Board and the Union. 🌐</p>

限制性同位语 vs 非限制性同位语 ☆☆☆

与限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句的概念类似，也存在限制性同位语和非限制性同位语的区别。大部分同位语是非限制性同位语，同位语只对它所修饰的名词进行补充说明，而限制性同位语则限定它所修饰的名词的范围。用数学语言比较容易分析：设被同位语修饰的名词 = 集合 A，同位语 = d，名词 + 同位语 = 集合 W，则有 A d = W。

1 限制性同位语

$W \in A$ ，即「名词 + 同位语」的范围经过限制性同位语的限定之后缩小了，「名词 + 同位语」所表示的范围只是原名词的范围的一个子集。或者反过来说，去掉同位语，名词的范围会扩大。一般而言，限制性同位语与所修饰名词之间不用逗号隔开。

Mark's teacher John Smith served in the army. 🌐

Your cousin Danielle has beautiful hair. 🌐

The famous musician Stevie Wonder is completely blind. 🌐

2 非限制性同位语

$W = A$ ，即加上非限制性定语从句，「名词 + 同位语」的范围并未缩小。或者反过来说，去掉同位语，名词的范围不会扩大。一般而言，非限制性同位语和所修饰名词之间用逗号隔开。

Fred's biology teacher, Ted Jones, served in the navy. 🌐

Elvis Presley, my favorite musician, will be legendary for decades to come. 🌐

President Obama, the popular US president, usually presents eloquent speeches. 🌐

6.3 词性

英语中有 10 种词性 (part of speech)，分为实词和虚词两大类。实词 (content word) 即具有独立意义的词，一般具有词形变化^①；虚词虚词 (function word) 即没有独立意义的词，只能协助实词完成意义传达，一般没有词形变化。

^① 部分代词有复数形式，比如 ones、others；部分代词有所有格形式，比如 one's、each other's。但是本书已将这些复数形式列入代词表，将这些所有格形式视为形容词性代词列入代词表（见 4.2 代词），完成了对代词表的穷举，所以也可以说代词没有词形变化，并属于封闭词类。



词性还可以分为开放词类 (open class) 和封闭词类 (closed class)。如果某词性中的词可以增加数量，则属于开放词类；反之，则属于封闭词类。一般认为，除代词外的所有实词词性都属于开放词类，所有虚词词性都属于封闭词类。

类别	词类	词性	英文名称	缩写	语法成分/功能
实词	开放词类	名词	noun	n.	主语、宾语、补语、同位语、定语、状语 (4.1.3 名词)
		实义动词	notional verb full verb	v.	与助动词共同构成谓语动词，做谓语 构成非谓语动词，做除谓语外的成分 (5.1.2 实义动词)
		形容词	adjective	adj. a.	定语、补语、状语 (6.3.1 形容词)
		副词	adverb	adv. ad.	状语、补语 (6.3.2 副词)
		数词 ^①	numeral	num.	做限定词，限定名词 主语、宾语、补语、同位语 (4.1.1 限定词)
虚词	封闭词类	代词	pronoun	pron.	主语、宾语、补语、同位语 (4.2 代词)
		助动词	auxiliary verb	aux.	与实义动词共同构成谓语动词，做谓语 (5.1.1 助动词)
		冠词	article	art.	做限定词，限定名词 (4.1.1 限定词)
		介词	preposition	prep.	构成介宾短语 (6.3.3 介词)
		连词	conjunction	conj.	连接词/词组，构成并列成分 (3.2 并列结构) 连接句子，构成复杂句、复合句 (第二章 复杂句、3.1 复合句)
		感叹词	exclamation /interjection	ex. /int.	表示感叹 Ahem、aw、bye、OK、hey、gosh awesome、bravo、finally、really? Big deal、Good heavens、Mama mia

传统语法中还有小品词 (particle) 的概念，比如不定式的标志 to、短语动词中的副词。大部分小品词，在本书中都视为其他词性，不将小品词单列为一种词性。比如：

He looked **up** 副词 from his newspaper to talk to us. (Oxford)

In fact, any group of people who does not compete successfully does **not** 副词 fit into the mainstream of American life as well as those who do. (2018 专四)

^① 也有语法书不将数词视为独立的词性，而是视其用法归入名词和形容词。



Well 感叹词, you may be right. 好吧, 你可能是对的。

On 介词 the death of his wife, he hooked up with another woman. 老婆一死, 他就和另外一个女人好上了。

另外还有一些「某某词」的说法, 实际上并不是一种独立的词性, 有的是某种词性的子概念, 有的是语法概念。

概念	说明
情态动词 modal verb	助动词的一种, 助动词分为基本助动词、情态动词和半助动词 (5.1.1 助动词)
动名词 gerund	
分词 participle	
现在分词 present participle	属于动词的非谓语动词形式 (1.1 非谓语动词)
过去分词 past participle	
量词 measure word	在英语中并不属于一种独立的词性, 而往往是名词 (比如 cup) 或代词 (比如 plenty)
拟声词 onomatopoeia	属于修辞学的概念, 本身属于名词或动词等词性 to shut the door with a bang (Oxford) to bang one's fist on the table (Oxford)
限定词 determiner	有语法书和词典将限定词单列为一种词性, 但是本书认为限定词属于语法概念, 包括冠词、名词所有格、形容词性物主代词、指示代词、不定代词、疑问代词、数量词词组等 (4.1.1 限定词)
操作词 operator	生成语法的概念, 可以简单理解为第一个助动词
先行词 antecedent	定语从句中的概念, 指被定语从句修饰的名词、名词词组或代词 (2.2 定语从句)
疑问词 interrogative	也称特殊疑问词, 一般分为疑问代词 (what、who 等) 和疑问副词 (when、how 等) ^① (2.1.2 特殊疑问句的陈述语序、 5.4.1 陈述语气)

^① 疑问词并一定是一个词, 语法分析中应该将提至主语前的助动词/第一个助动词前的词组整体视为疑问词才符合疑问句「疑问词提前」的一般规律。

How old are you?

Whose umbrella is this?

Which cities have you been visiting these two years?



引导词	本书中的概念，用于引导从句或复合句，可能是代词、副词、连词（ 第二章 复杂句、3.1 复合句 ）
伪连词	本书中的概念，指容易被混淆为并列连词的连接副词（ 3.1.3-1 常见伪连词 ）
倒装信号词	本书中的概念，指倒装句中被置于句首的结构，不一定是一个词（ 7.2 倒装句 ）

6.3.1 形容词

形容词的英文名称 adjective 原用于 noun adjective，来自于拉丁文 nomen adjективum，原意即附加于名词之上的词/修饰名词的词。除了做定语修饰名词（[4.1.2 定语](#)），形容词还可以补语^①。

功能	例句
做定语	Too often the real <u>enemies</u> of market capitalism are some of the leading <u>beneficiaries</u> of the current <u>model</u> , which favors big <u>monopolies</u> and consumer exploitation. (2012年12月六级一卷)
做表语	After such an experience an animal often remains passive even when it can effect change — a state they called learned helplessness. (2016年12月四级二卷)
做宾语补语	The decisions made it more difficult for states to collect sales tax on certain online purchases. (2019年考研一)
做状语	She returned home, exhausted from work. (Oxford)

1) 主动形容词 vs 被动形容词

部分形容词表主动意义，另外一些形容词表被动意义。最典型的是由现在分词 doing 变化而来的形容词表主动，对应的由过去分词 done 变化而来的形容词表被动。很多形容词由动词加形容词后缀变化而来，某些形容词后缀往往表示主动，另外一些形容词后缀往往表被动。

1 表主动意义的形容词

后缀	例子
-ing	amazing、boring、embarrassing、exciting、frightening、shocking、interesting、surprising、worrying
-ous	abstentious、advantageous、ambiguous、anxious、autonomous、cautious、contemptuous、dangerous
-ful	beautiful、careful、delightful、fearful、harmful、helpful、hopeful、respectful、shameful、useful、wonderful

^① 有少数形容词只能做定语修饰名词，比如 an **utter** stranger (Oxford)、**left** hand 。

还有少数形容词只能做补语，不能做定语修饰名词，比如以 a-开始的形容词 afraid、asleep、alike、awake 等。



-ory	compulsory、contradictory、illusory、satisfactory
-some	awesome、fearsome、loathsome、troublesome

② 表被动意义的形容词

后缀	例子
-ed	amazed、bored、embarrassed、excited、frightened、shocked、interested surprised、worried
-able ^①	adaptable、adjustable、movable、readable、washable

2) 易混为副词的形容词

部分形容词以 ly 结尾，易混淆为副词。另外，部分以 ly 结尾的形容词兼具副词、名词词性。

词性	例子
形容词	friendly、brotherly、sisterly、girly、motherly、fatherly、costly、stately、masterly、kingly、queenly、lordly、heavenly、princely、miserly、surly、grisly、portly、slovenly
形容词/副词	ghastly、sprightly、leisurely、deadly、deathly、timely、early、only、likely、lowly
形容词/副词/名词	daily、weekly、monthly、quarterly、yearly、orderly

6.3.2 副词

副词的英文名称 adverb 原意即「ad + verb」，修饰动词的词。除了修饰动词，副词还可以修饰形容词、副词、介宾短语、限定词等。语法分析时，副词一般被分析为状语。副词的位置比较灵活，可以前置、后置甚至中置（比如置于助动词与实义动词之间），往往以习惯而定。

功能	例句
修饰动词	While 9 out of 10 white students <u>routinely</u> get their diplomas within six years, only 7 out of 10 black students made it to graduation day in several recent classes. (2011 年 6 月六级) Indeed, the shoulder joint <u>is clearly specialized</u> for the down-and-forward, up-and-back movement of normal flapping. (托福 TPO64) To date, controlling pollution and regulating ocean resources <u>have still</u> <u>not</u> <u>been comprehensively</u> <u>addressed</u> by law, but international law — established through the customs and practices of nations — does not preclude such efforts. (LSAT)
修饰形容词	People were <u>understandably</u> <u>eager</u> to be able to buy this wonderful fruit. (2008 年高考)

^① 也有以 able 结尾的形容词是表主动意义的，比如 suitable。



	<p>The concept of gamification is not entirely new, Werbach says. (2016年12月四级三卷)</p> <p>In my view it is perfectly possible for many species of animals living in zoos or wildlife parks to have a quality of life as high as, or higher than, in the wild. (剑桥雅思 14)</p>
修饰副词	<p>I like it very much. (Oxford)</p> <p>He's not in the office right now. (Oxford)</p> <p>The sounds made as each wing is opened carry extremely well over distance and advertise his presence widely. (托福 TPO17)</p>
修饰介宾短语	<p>dead on time (Oxford)</p> <p>The complex problem of controlling air traffic around large modern airports is also achieved by artificial intelligence that operates well beyond the capability of mere human air traffic controllers. (2017专四)</p> <p>Loneliness is a big factor, especially among housewives. (2018专八)</p>
修饰限定词	<p>approximately 30 minutes</p> <p>The opportunities for free play, which I experienced almost every day of my childhood, are becoming increasingly scarce. (剑桥雅思 14)</p> <p>By the early eighth century, the empire had lost roughly two-thirds of the territory it had possessed in the year 600, and its remaining area was being raided by Arabs and Bulgarians, who at times threatened to take Constantinople and extinguish the empire altogether. (GMAT)</p>

1) 形容词变副词规则

多数副词由形容词加 ly 变化而来。

形容词	变化	例子
普通形容词	加 ly	quick → quickly polite → politely immediate → immediately
少数以 e 结尾	去掉 e, 再加 ly	true → truly due → duly
以 y 结尾, 且读音为[i] ^①	变 y 为 i, 再加 ly	happy → happily heavy → heavily angry → angrily
以 ic 结尾	加 ally	economic → economically basic → basically scientific → scientifically

^① 如果发音为[ai], 直接加 ly, 比如 dry → dryly、sly → slyly、shy → shyly。



以辅音字母加 le 结尾	去掉 e, 再加 y	simple → simply considerable → considerably terrible → terribly
以-ll 结尾时	加 y	dull → dully shrill → shrilly

2) 易混为形容词的副词

部分形容词和副词同形，部分同形的形容词/副词与以 ly 结尾的副词词义需要辨析。

词性	例子
形容词/副词	alone、back、either、enough、far、fast、inside、outside、overseas、straight、well
形容词/副词 vs 副词	bright vs brightly、clean vs cleanly、clear vs clearly、close vs closely、dead vs deadly、deep vs deeply、direct vs directly、easy vs easily、fair vs fairly、firm vs firmly、hard vs hardly、high vs highly、late vs lately、loud vs loudly、low vs lowly ^① 、most vs mostly、pretty vs prettily、quick vs quickly、right vs rightly、sharp vs sharply、slow vs slowly、sound vs soundly、sure vs surely、tight vs tightly、wide vs widely、wrong vs wrongly

6.3.3 介词

顾名思义，介词就是「介于...之间的词」^②，其英文名称 preposition 的构词法是 pre-position，中英文的构词法均指向了介词的词源，即表示空间位置关系。这个空间位置扩大为一般意义上的对象，那么介词就表示对象与其他对象之间的某种关系。根据认知语言学理论，人类能够直观感受到的往往是空间概念，所以人类的语言往往用空间概念去隐喻时间以及其他不可触摸的抽象概念。介词往往有一个表示空间位置关系的本义，再从这个本义引申出其他的抽象意义，可以称之为引申义。比如 in 表示空间位置关系「在...里面」(in the box)，进而引申为「在...一段时间内」(in the morning)、「在...方面」(in physics)、「处于...状态中」(in confusion)、「穿...颜色的衣服」(in red) 等抽象词义。

^① lowly 同时有形容词和副词词性。

^② 广义上的介词 (adposition) 分为前置介词 (preposition)、后置介词 (postposition) 和环绕介词 (circumposition，即前置介词和后置介词同时用，环绕着介词的宾语)，但是在英语中介词一般就只指前置介词，同时将后置介词和环绕介词做其他解释。比如 five years ago, five miles away, five years on/hence, the whole night through，可以视为后置介词，但是英语中将此处的 ago、away、on、hence、through 视为副词。再比如 in view of, in place of，可以视为环绕介词，但是英语中可以将其整体视为短语介词 (phrasal preposition) 或复杂介词 (complex preposition)，也可以将其视为两个介宾短语连用，比如 eat raisins in place of junk food desserts 圈 可以视为 in place 和 of junk food desserts 两个介宾短语。



介词属于封闭词类，英语中大约有 150 个介词（[附录三 介词全表](#)）。介词根据长短可以分为简单介词（simple preposition）和复合介词（compound preposition）。简单介词即由一个单词组成的介词（one-word preposition），比如 in、on、at 等，以及由两个或多个词组合而成但仍然是一个词的 into、onto、notwithstanding 等。复合介词即由多个单词组成的介词，双词介词（two-word preposition）比如 according to、instead of 等，三词介词（three-word preposition）比如 in view of、with reference to 等。复合介词用法与单词介词没有区别，一般视为一个整体，不必做内部结构分析，但为了更好地理解和归类记忆，可根据其内部结构分类如下：

1 双词介词 = X + 介词

绝大部分双词介词符合这一结构^①，其中 X 往往可以按照多种词性理解。

结构	例子
形容词/副词+介词	ahead 副词 of、along 副词 with、apart 副词 from、as 副词/连词/介词 for、as 副词/连词/介词 per、as 副词/连词/介词 to、aside 副词 from、away 形容词/副词 from、due 形容词 to、forward 形容词/副词 of、further 形容词/副词 to、 instead 副词 of、near 形容词/副词/介词 to、next 形容词/副词 to、regardless 形容词/副词 of、opposite 形容词/副词 to、other 形容词 than、out 副词/介词 of、 outside 形容词/介词 of、preparatory 形容词 to、prior 形容词 to、together 副词 with、up 形容词/副词/介词 against、up 形容词/副词/介词 to、up 形容词/副词/介词 until
介词+介词	in between、on to、save for
连词+介词	because of、but for、except for
非谓语动词+介词	according to、depending on、owing to
名词+介词	thanks to

2 三词介词 = 介词 + 名词 + 介词

绝大部分三词介词符合这一结构^②，其中的名词视为不可数名词，无须用冠词。

by means of、in addition to、in case of、in face of、in favour of、in front of^③、in lieu of、in place of、in spite of、in view of、on account of、on behalf of、on top of、with reference to、with regard to

^① 例外比如 on board 是「介词 + 名词」的结构。

^② 例外比如 as well as 是「副词 + 副词 + 介词」的结构（[8.1.1 as 的用法](#)）。

^③ 对比：in the front of 不必视为词组介词，in the front of X 可以分析为介宾短语 of X 做 the front 的后置定语，比如 There is a dent [in the front (of the car)]介宾短语-后置定语 [介宾短语-地点状语]



1) 介宾短语

介词一般后接名词性成分，比如名词、名词词组、（名词性）代词、动名词、宾语从句等，该名词性成分视为介词的宾语，两者组成介宾短语（可简称 PO）。但是介词后面也可以接非名词性成分^①。

接续方法	例子
名词性成分	<p>Over {the years}名词词组, Parisian cafes have fallen victim to changes 名词 in the French lifestyle — longer working hours, a fast food boom and a younger generation's desire to spend more time at home 名词. (2015 年高考)</p> <p>While they sound efficient and cost-saving, a recent study reports that they are not effective, primarily because depressed patients are not likely to engage with them 代词 or stick with them 代词. (2019 年 6 月四级三卷)</p> <p>Losing a job is hurting: you don't skip down to {the job}名词词组 centre with {a song}名词词组 in {your heart}名词词组, delighted at {the prospect}名词词组 of {doubling your income}动名词 from {the generous state}名词词组. (2014 年考研一卷)</p> <p>Following the explosion of creativity in Florence during the 14th century known as the Renaissance, the modern world saw a departure from {what it had once known}宾语从句. (2020 年考研一)</p>
形容词	<p>I gave the owner as much information as 介词 possible 形容词 and headed home to see what news the night might bring. (2017 年高考)</p> <p>Cleaning the pants will take longer than 介词 usual 形容词. (2013 年 12 月六级一卷)</p> <p>He was tall, with broad shoulder and a beard that turned from black 形容词 toward gray 形容词 over the years. (2013 年高考)</p>
副词	<p>Failure more often than 介词 not 副词 breeds success. (2013 年 12 月六级二卷)</p> <p>Missing until 介词 recently 副词 were fossils clearly intermediate, or transitional, between land mammals and cetaceans. (托福 TPO2)</p>

^① 传统语法往往将该非名词性成分视为是名词性成分的省略。

1 形容词: We got there later **than** 介词 **usual** 形容词. = We got there later **than** 介词 **{the usual case}**名词词组.

2 注意原句中 than 是介词，虽然原句在语义上等同于 We got there later than 连词 we usually did. 但是后句中 than 是连词。两句虽然语义相同，但是语法性质不同。

The scene went **from blindingly bright** 形容词 **to pitch black** 形容词. = The scene went **from {a blindingly bright color}**名词词组 **to {a pitch black color}**名词词组.

3 副词: I worked there **until recently** 副词. = I worked there **until {the recent time}**名词词组.

4 介宾短语: I pulled him out **from {under the bed}**介宾短语. = I pulled him out **from {the place under the bed}**名词词组.



非谓语动词	School-leavers may moan, but they have little choice but 介词 { to embrace university and the student debt that comes with it} ^{不定式} . (2016年12月六级二卷) If you are so naive [as to ask such a question] ^{介宾短语-状语} , I will answer it, but it is not worth wasting words on. (2010年专八)
介宾短语	I have been the consumer reporter of NBC's Today show for 介词 { over a decade } ^{介宾短语} . (2013年高考) One more look and he noticed flares shooting out from 介词 { under the disabled vehicle } ^{介宾短语} . (2016年高考)

介宾短语可以做定语、状语、补语。

功能	例句
后置定语 ^①	Music production <u>experience</u> (in radio) is necessary, along with rich <u>knowledge</u> (of modern dance music). (2011年高考) Gazing down on the city from the Getty Center, an <u>art museum</u> (in the Santa Monica Mountains), one would find the <u>view</u> (of the Pacific Ocean) blurred by the haze. (2018年6月六级二卷) The <u>war</u> (on smoking), now five decades old and counting, is one of the nation's greatest public health success stories — but not for everyone. (2015年专四)
状语	Polar bears are being increasingly threatened [by the effects of climate change], but their disappearances could have far-reaching consequences. (剑桥雅思16) [At the upper timberline] the trees begin to become twisted and deformed. (托福TPO1) Peter the Great introduced the first cat [to the Hermitage] [in the early eighteenth century]. (SAT)
补语	Conflict is < on the menu > ^{表语} tonight at the café La Chope. (2015年高考) I found his argument < totally off the point > ^{宾语补语} My father looked < after me > ^{动词补语} very well.

介宾短语具体做什么语法成分，取决于它在句子中与其他语法成分的相对位置，甚至取决于句子的语义（ **6.2.3-1 定语** **状语** **补语**）。有的介宾短语所做的语法成分可以有多种语

^①有一些介宾短语虽然从语法上可以视为后置定语，但是在整个句子中，应该和它所修饰的成分视为一个整体，比如 a gradient of {**1 in 4**}^{整体理解为1/4}、{**one out of every five**}^{整体理解为1/5} students、{**100 over 100**}^{整体理解为100%}，再比如 Because of rain leaching, most tropical rain forest soils have {**low to very low**}^{视为一整体，意为「低的和很低的」} mineral nutrient content, in dramatic contrast to mineral-rich grassland soils. (托福TPO53 R2)



法解释，语法解释的不同也决定了语义的不同，这样的句子单独出现会产生歧义，所以往往需要上下文才能确定到底是哪一种语义。

I saw a man (**on the street**)_{介宾短语-后置定语}. 我看到街上一个男的（我未必在街上，比如可能在街边的楼上）。

I saw a man [**on the street**]_{介宾短语-地点状语}. 我在街上看到一个男的（他未必在街上，比如可能在街边的楼上）。

有的句子中的介宾短语可以做多种语法解释，但是并不影响语义，比如：

Shanghai is the largest city (**in China**)_{介宾短语-后置定语}. 上海是中国最大的城市。

Shanghai is the largest city [**in China**]_{介宾短语-地点状语}. = [**In China**]_{介宾短语-地点状语}, Shanghai is the largest city. 在中国，上海是最大的城市。= 上海是中国最大的城市。

2) A of B 结构

常见的「A of B」结构（A、B都是名词）有两种可能的语法解释。

① 当A为一般名词时，核心词为A，(of B)是介宾短语做后置定语。

Several years later, Watson went on to produce ground-breaking achievements in the field (of medicine). (2020年12月六级一卷)

This rapid zone (of transition) is called the upper timberline. (托福TPO1)

② 当「A of」为量词词组时，核心词为B。

(**a lot of**)_{量词词组-限定词} people

(**a^① great number of**)_{量词词组-限定词} people

3) 介词 **vs** 副词 **vs** 形容词

① 介词 **vs** 副词

很多词兼做介词和副词，两者的词义相同或高度相关。一般用后面有无宾语来区分是介词还是副词：带宾语的是介词，往往与前面的动词组成一个及物的动词词组（[6.1.2-2 Vi+P=Vt](#)）；不带宾语的是副词，可以与前面的动词整体视为一个不及物的动词词组（[5.1.2-2 短语动词](#)）。

The monkey quickly climbed **up** 介词 {the tree}_{介宾的宾语}. (此句的 climbed up 是及物的动词词组)

The monkey quickly climbed **up** 副词. (此句的 climbed up 是不及物的动词词组)

She put **on** 介词 {her best make-up}_{介宾的宾语}. (此句的 put on 是及物的动词词组)

She had her make-up **on** 副词. (此句的 had 本身就是及物动词，have...on 虽然是及物的动词词组，但是宾语并非由 on 引导)

这种判断方法有时并不直观，需要仔细区分。

come **in** 副词 [**two days a week**]_{名词词组-时间状语} (一周进来两天)

^① 注意区分 a number of... 和 the number of...，前者是 (**a number of**)_{量词词组} + 复数名词，后接复数动词；后者是 the number (**of + 名词**)_{介宾短语-后置定语}，核心名词是 number，后接单数动词。



come **in** 副词 [**two days later**]名词词组-时间状语 (两天后进来)

come **in** 副词 [**two executive days**]名词词组-时间状语 (连续两天进来)

come [**in** 介词 **two days**]介宾短语-时间状语 (两天内来)

The car is still slowly **climbing** 及物动词 [**the hill**]名词-宾语 [**up** 副词 [**till** 介词 **now**]介宾短语]介宾短语-时间状语.^①

② 介词 形容词

部分词兼做介词和形容词，两者词义相同或高度相关，这样的形容词往往做名词的前置定语，符合名词词组的一般结构：名词词组 = 限定词 + 前置定语 + 名词 + 后置定语（[4.1 名词词组](#)）。

in the **on** 形容词 position (Oxford) (开启的)

Purple is this year's **in** 形容词 color. (流行的)

Short skirts are **in** 形容词 again. (Oxford) (流行的)

We both had an **off** 形容词 day. (Oxford) (不如意的，倒霉的)

^① up till = up until, 可以整体视为一个复合介词。



第七章 特殊句

7.1 强调句 ☆☆

英语有多种手段可以实现强调。

- ① 词汇手段：Those were her **very** words. (Oxford)
- ② 口语手段：重读、语调等
- ③ 语序手段：强调句、倒装句等

7.1.1 强调句

通常说的强调句又称分裂句 (cleft sentence) , 即「It be...A...that/who...B...」。强调句可以理解为一种倒装 (广义) , 被强调部分 A 提前至句首。判断强调句正误的方法是：去掉「It be」和「that/who」, 剩余的「AB」如果仍然成句 (可能需要调整语序) , 则强调句正确。

强调句可以强调主语、宾语 (单宾语、直接宾语) 、状语、补语等语法成分, 尤以强调主语和状语为最常见, 不能强调谓语动词、间接宾语、定语、同位语等语法成分^①。

被强调成分	例句
主语	<p>It was he who met a beautiful girl yesterday. </p> <p>It is this implicit or explicit reference to nature that fully justifies the use of the word garden, though in a "liberated" sense, to describe these synthetic constructions. (2013 年考研英语一)</p> <p>It was she who, according to legend, taught Navajo women how to weave. (托福 TPO40)</p> <p>In the long run, it is the public, either directly or through its politicians, that has the power to make such destructive policies unprofitable and illegal, and to make sustainable environmental policies profitable. (剑桥雅思 15)</p>

^① 强调句之所以能强调主语、宾语 (单宾语、直接宾语) 、状语、补语等语法成分, 是因为强调这些语法成分时, 整个强调句在语法上仍然成立, 即「It **主语** be 系动词-谓语动词 **A** 表语/先行词 (that/who **B**) 定语从句」, 且句意不发生改变。而如果强调谓语动词、间接宾语、定语、同位语, 则句子语法错误或句意改变。

- ① 如果强调谓语动词, 则主句为「It be + 谓语动词」, that/who 从句部分缺少谓语动词, 在语法上均不成立。
✖ It was **met** that he a beautiful girl yesterday.
- ② 如果强调间接宾语, 则主句为「It be + 间接宾语」, that 从句部分缺少间接宾语或「介词 + 间接宾语」。
✖ It was **me** that he gave a book. 应改为 It was to me that he gave a book. 但此时强调的 to me 是状语。
- ③ 如果强调定语, 则整句为「It **形式主语** be + 原句定语表语 {that 原句其他部分} **主语从句**」, 在语法上成立, 但是句意与原句不同。
✖ It was **beautiful** that he met a girl yesterday.
- ④ 如果强调同位语, 则整句为「It **形式主语** be + 原句同位语表语 {that 原句其他部分} **主语从句**」, 在语法上成立, 但是句意与原句不同, 句意可能不通。
✖ It was **the Great** that Alexander conquered Egypt.



宾语	单宾语	It was a beautiful girl who he met yesterday.
	直接宾语	It was some books that she lent me five days ago.
补语	表语	It was a monster that he eventually became.
	宾补	It was his apprentice that he made her.
状语 ^①		<p>It was yesterday that he met a beautiful girl. </p> <p>It was only then that the picture would begin to disclose itself. (2020年12月六级一卷)</p> <p>It was with these great revelations that a new kind of philosophy founded in reason was born. (2020年考研英语一)</p> <p>It was not until the Cambrian period, beginning about 600 million years ago, that a great proliferation of macroscopic species occurred on Earth and produced a fossil record that allows us to track the rise and fall of biodiversity. (托福TPO33)</p>

7.1.2 其它强调

英语中还有其他多种方法实现强调。

强调方法	例句
还原 do、does、did 等助动词	<p>Do sit down. (Oxford) Accidents like that do sometimes happen. (Oxford) The honey guide does not actually like honey, but it does like the wax in the beehives. (2012年高考) He did look tired. (Oxford)</p>
very、only、single、such、the last、ever、never、just、badly、highly、really 等形容词/副词	<p>He's the last person I'd ask! (Oxford) I'm sorry, Ruth, I really am. (Oxford) Those were her very words. (Oxford) But she says the results still suggest women in geoscience are at a potential disadvantage from the very beginning of their careers starting with those less than outstanding letters of recommendation. (2017年12月四级三卷) Unhappy parents rarely are provoked to wonder if they shouldn't have had kids, but unhappy childless folks are bothered with the message that children are the single most important thing in the world: obviously their misery must be a direct result of the gaping baby-size holes in their lives. (2011年考研一)</p>

^① 部分单个副词做状语不用强调句强调。

✖ It was **carefully** that she read the manual.



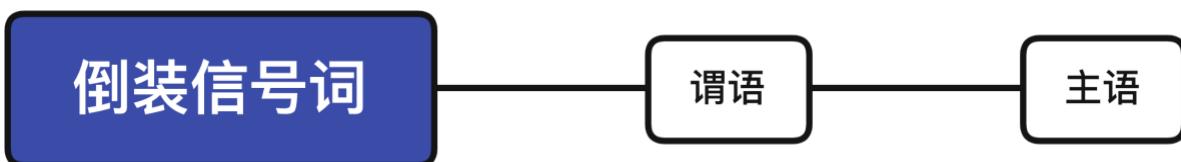
in the world、on earth、at all、in God's name、for God's sake 等介宾短语短语插入语	Why in the world did you not reveal yourself sooner? (Oxford) "Oh, for God's sake! " snarled Dyson. (Oxford) What in God's name are you doing? (Oxford) Quartz is quartz — a silicon ion surrounded by four oxygen ions — there's no difference at all between two-million-year-old Pleistocene quartz and Cambrian quartz created over 500 million years ago. (托福 TPO6)
双重否定 ^①	Few political libraries are without a copy of <i>Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth and Happiness</i> by Richard Thaler and Cass Sunstein. (2015 年 12 月六级三卷) Stepping out of the house in the morning to greet our neighbours — wild horses on one side, donkeys on the other — with nothing but birdsong filling the air, I felt a sense of adventure you normally only get with wild camping. (2017 年专八)
比较状语从句	Olafur Eliasson's current Tate Modern show, for instance, might seem nothing more than an entertainment, overrun as it is with kids romping in fog rooms and spray mist installations. (2020 年 12 月六级一卷)
重复	— Can you just get the message through to Pete for me? — No, no , I can't. (Collins)
感叹词	Alas , my funds have some limitations. (Oxford) Why (哎), we've only walked a mile! (Oxford)
反意疑问句	Their house is lovely, isn't it? (Oxford)

7.2 倒装句 ☆☆

通常说的倒装句即狭义的倒装 (inversion)，仅指主语与谓语之间的语序调整，按谓语动词是整体还是部分倒装到主语之前，又分为完全倒装和部分倒装。

7.2.1 完全倒装

完全倒装 (full inversion) 即谓语动词完全倒装到主语之前，结构是：



^① 部分双重否定常见于俚语等非规范英文，建议慎用。

They **ain't** got **nothing** to say. (Oxford)

I **don't** need **no** reason. —*Can't Stop the Feeling* by Justin Timberlake



倒装信号词即被强调部分，往往是状语或表语。

倒装信号词	例句
表示方向方位的副词	谓语动词常用 come、go、be、lie、run、rush、be 等表示来去或状态的动词 ① Away flew the birds. Out rushed the children. Here comes the bus. (Oxford) There's a restaurant round the corner. (Oxford)②
表示方位的介宾短语	Down that path lies economic decline. (2013 年 12 月六级三卷) Outside the room sits a little dog. By the window is my English teacher. In front of our house stands a tall tree with a history of 1,000 years. Among the goods are Christmas trees, flowers, candles and toys.
形容词	Present at the meeting were Mr. White and many other guests.
非谓语动词	Standing beside the back door was our teacher. Seated on the grass are a group of graduates.

7.2.2 部分倒装

部分倒装 (partial inversion) 即谓语动词并非完全置于主语之前，而只是将第一个助动词置于主语之前。结构如下，除倒装信号词外，部分与一般疑问句结构相同^③。



倒装信号词即被强调部分，往往是状语。

倒装信号词	例句
only + 状语 ^④	Only after a year of friendly discussion did Ms. Garza finally say yes. (2016 年高考)

① 当主语是人称代词时，主谓不倒装，比如 **Here we go again.** (Oxford) **There you are/go.** (Oxford)

② 虽然倒装句原意是把被强调部分调整到句首的显眼位置，但是语言使用者习以为常之后，这种倒装结构就失去了强调的作用，往往成为约定俗成的用法，不倒装的原句反而不正确或不常用了。最典型的例子即 **There be** 存在句型，原句「名词 be there」的主系表句型已不再使用，默认使用倒装的「**There be + 名词**」句型。

③ 当谓语动词是系动词 be 的一般现在时和一般过去时，且系动词 be 前没有其他助动词时，一般疑问句的结构是「系动词 be + 主语 + 表语」（[5.4.1 陈述语气](#)），用在此处的部分倒装中应相应调整。

④ only 用于句首也可能是「Only + 主语」，此时仍用自然语序。

Only **you** can make all this world seem right. —*Only You* by The Platters



	The adolescent wants to do things first for only then does he appreciate the problems involved and want to learn more about them. (2014 年专四)
否定词	<p>never、not、seldom、little、nowhere、in no way、no more、no longer、by no means、not until...、hardly...when...、scarcely...when...、no sooner ...than...、not only...but also...等</p> <p>Hardly had he opened the newspaper when the telephone rang. (Oxford) (前倒后不倒) ①</p> <p>Scarcely had she finished when the door opened. (Oxford) (前倒后不倒)</p> <p>No sooner had she said it than she burst into tears. (Oxford) (前倒后不倒)</p> <p>Not only did they develop such a device but (also) by the turn of the millennium they had also managed to embed it in a worldwide system accessed by billions of people every day. (2012 年考研一) (前倒后不倒)</p> <p>They had experienced great difficulty finding game west of the Rockies and not until the second of December did they kill their first elk. (托福 TPO4)</p>
so...that... such...that...	<p>So admired were these pieces that they encouraged the development of earthenware made in imitation of porcelain and instigated research into the method of their manufacture. (托福 TPO10) (前倒后不倒)</p> <p>Such a boring lecture was she giving that I left. (前倒后不倒) </p>

7.2.3 广义倒装 ☆☆☆

广义的倒装指任何偏离正常语序的用法，除上述狭义的倒装外，还包括前置（fronting/preposing）和后置（postposing）——这些概念只有在专业语法上才需要区分，在实用语法中笼统称为倒装未尝不可。

1) 宾语、补语前置

宾语、补语等可以前置，以起到「先声夺人」的强调效果。

前置项	例句
宾语	A scandal I call it.
表语	Very strange it seemed.
宾补	A horrible mess you've made it.

① 「前倒后不倒」指 Hardly 后的部分用倒装，when 后的部分不倒装。scarcely...when...等同理。



2) 冗长成分后置

为了尽快突显整句句型，提高句子可阅读性，经常将冗长的语法成分后置。部分情况下还用形式主语、形式宾语先行在语法结构上提示主语和宾语，而将实质的逻辑主语、逻辑宾语后置于句末。一般来说，如果用逻辑主语替换形式主语，句子仍然成立；但是如果用逻辑宾语替换形式宾语，则句子往往语法不通或产生歧义。

后置项	例句
逻辑主语	<p>It's awfully nice of you to come all this way to see me. (Collins)</p> <p>It's no good arguing with him. (Oxford)</p> <p>However, it remains to be seen whether there are any character traits that predict the kind of boredom each of us might be prone to. (剑桥雅思 13)</p>
逻辑宾语 6.2.1 宾语	<p>Young adults with a college degree found it easier to live independently of their parents. (2019 年 6 月四级二卷)</p> <p>I think it no need talking about it with them. (剑桥雅思 13)</p> <p>I don't like it that he's so lazy. (剑桥雅思 13)</p>
宾语	<p>This leaves open {the question whether he acted correctly} <small>宾语后置. (Collins)</small></p> <p>Many participants and commentators emphasised that greater transparency in markets is needed to mitigate the impact of volatility, and make evident {whether adequate stocks and supplies are available} <small>宾语从句后置. (剑桥雅思 12)</small></p>

3) 非真实条件句助动词前置

在虚拟语气中，非真实条件状语从句助动词 were、had、should 可以前置，同时省略引导词 If (6.4.3 虚拟语气)。

从句原结构	倒装形式	例句
If...had done/been...	Had...done/been...	<p>Had it not been your advice, I would have made the wrong decision. (2016 年专四)</p>
If...should do/be...	Should...do/be...	<p>Should such imbalances continue, pessimists say, they could contribute to slower growth. (2011 年 12 月六级一卷)</p> <p>Should there be any questions, please don't hesitate to ask me. (剑桥雅思 13)</p>



If...were... ^①	Were...	Were Shakespeare to return today , he would be amazed to find his plays being studied in schools. (Macmillan Dictionary)
---------------------------	---------	---

4) 让步状语从句表语、状语前置

在 as 引导的让步状语从句中，表语、状语或实义动词可以前置（[2.3.1-6 让步状语从句](#)）（[8.1.1 as 的用法](#)）。

前置项	例句
表语	Wealthy as he is, Mark is not a happy man. (2012 年专四)
状语	As much as some scientists may complain about the new awards, two things seem clear. (2014 考研英语一)
实义动词	Try as he might, he could not forget it. (Oxford)

7.3 感叹句 ☆☆

感叹句 (exclamation/exclamatory sentence) 用于表达强烈感情，语法结构往往不同于一般句子。

1) what 型感叹句

「what 型感叹句」的结构是 what 疑问句的陈述语序，即：



「what + 名词词组」可整体视为一个名词词组，在感叹句中做表语、宾语补语、宾语、直接宾语，但不能做主语、间接宾语、同位语。

what + 名词词组		例句
宾语	单宾语	What it must have cost! (Oxford) What a good job you have done!
	直接宾语	What a difficult task you have given me!
补语	表语	What a nice dress (it is)常省略! (Oxford)
	宾语补语	What a fool you have made yourself.

2) how 型感叹句

「how 型感叹句」的结构是 how 疑问句的陈述语序，即：

^① were 型虚拟语气较少用倒装，且从句中是人称代词做表语时，一般不用倒装，比如 If I were you... → Were I you....



How + 形容词/副词

主语

谓语动词

...

其中, how 可以后接形容词, 整体视为一个形容词词组, 在感叹句中做表语、宾语补语, 但是不能做定语; how 也可以后接副词, 整体视为一个副词词组, 在感叹句中做状语; how 还可以单独做状语。

how+ 形容词/ 副词		例句
补语	表语	How clever the girl is!
	宾语补语	How hot the day is!
状语		How complicated you have made the situation.
		How time flies! How I dislike her! (Oxford)

2) 其他感叹用法

英语中还有其他一些句式可以表示感叹, 一般用于口语体中。

结构	例句
so、 such	I'm so glad you're here. (Oxford) Autumn's such a beautiful season. (Oxford)
that	That it should ever come to this! (Oxford)
if only	If only I were rich! (Oxford)
不定式	To think I left you alone in a place with a madman at large! (Collins)
疑问句	Isn't she lovely? Who would have known!

7.4 省略句 ☆☆☆

省略 (ellipsis) 是一种避免重复、精简语言的重要手段。省略的原则是: 在语法正确和没有歧义的前提下, 能省则省。

省略原则	例句
语法正确	Attempts have been made to 不可省略 curb this tendency, for example, by trying to incorporate some measure of quality as well as quantity into the assessment of an applicant's papers. (2019 年考研) I have neither the time nor the 不可省略 money. All of those specialized bulbs led to the building of specialized light fixtures, from the desk lamp you study by, to the ugly but beloved hand-painted Chinese lamp you inherited from your grandmother, to 不可省略 the ceiling fixture in your closet, to 不可省略 the light in your oven or refrigerator,



	and to 不可省略 the light that the dentist points at you. (2015 年 12 月六级二卷)
语义清晰	He treated her < with grave courtesy >不可省略. (Oxford) Many wives love their children more than they love 不可省略 their husband. Windborne pollen is dry, rounded, smooth, and generally smaller than that of 不可省略 insect-pollinated plants. (托福 TPO45)
能省则省	I think ()最好省略 that the door's locked, but I'll just go and make sure. (Oxford) They were generally not as educated as the people who remained in England (were)可省略 ()必须省略 educated. (GMAT)

1) 重复省略

重复省略即省略重复信息，可以是承前省略前句或前半句中已经出现的信息，也可以是接后省略后半句中出现的信息。注意是省略信息，未必是省略原词句。

重复省略	例句
承前句省略	– What is your name ? – (My name is) Ernest. The picture wasn't finished . If it had been (finished), I would have brought it.
承前半句省略	Some books are to be tasted, others (are) to be swallowed, and some few (are) to be chewed and digested. –Francis Bacon I'm ready when you are (ready). (Oxford) Someone has stolen my bike , but I don't know who (has stolen my bike). His suggestions made John happy, but (his suggestions made) Mary angry. This is his latest book ; I hope it is not his last (book).
接后半句省略	Advice is like snow: the softer it falls, the longer it dwells upon (the mind), and the deeper it sinks into, the mind . —Samuel Taylor Coleridge Tom is (playing for the school), Peter will be (playing for the school), and Harold might be, playing for the school . While (I was) waiting, I read a novel.

2) 语境省略

语境省略即根据语境省略不言而明的部分，被省略部分并未出现在前后句中，可根据语境还原。使用语境省略可以精简语言，往往还可以突显剩余部分。

(**I'm really**) sorry about the mess. (Oxford)

(**It's**) no wonder the waiters looked tired. (Oxford)

He breathed his last (**breath**). (Oxford)



Grenade! = There is a grenade coming at you.

(I) Will do (**it**).

She passed many a happy day at her mother's (**home/house**).

He was the first (**person**) to bear hardships.

3) 语法省略

语法省略即省略引导词、主语、限定词等语法功能性结构。

语法省略	例句
名词性从句	2.1.3-1 名词性从句中的省略
定语从句	2.2.3-3 关系词的省略
状语从句	2.3.3-1 状语从句中的省略
祈使句	祈使句可视为省略了表示听话者的主语 You (5.4.2 祈使语气) (You) Get out! (Oxford)
独立主格	在不引起歧义的前提下，省略独立主格中的限定词和形容词性物主代词 (1.2 独立主格)

7.5 非规范用法 ☆☆☆

在非正式文体和日常口语中，存在很多语法不严谨但已被广泛接受的用法，可以统称为「非规范用法」。一般而言，正式文体中应该使用语法严谨的规范用法，即使是非正式文体和口语中也应尽量使用规范用法，但是非规范用法也可以适当灵活运用。

1) 粘连句

粘连句 (run-on sentence) 即两个或多个句子之间缺乏引导词或适当标点，最典型的是以逗号连接两个句子 (逗号粘连, comma splice)，复合句、复杂句缺乏引导词也会造成粘连句。粘连句大多数情况下被视为是错句，但是在非正式文体中一般可以接受句意紧密相关的多个句子粘连，文学作品中也经常使用。

You jump, I jump! —*Titanic*

I came, I saw, I conquered. —Julius Caesar

It's true, the older I get, the more I feel time has wings. (2020 年高考)

Music doesn't make you better at math, conjugating Latin doesn't make you more logical, brain-training games don't make you smarter. (SAT)

Yes because he never did a thing like that before as ask to get his breakfast in bed with a couple of eggs since the City Arms hotel when he used to be pretending to be laid up with a sick voice doing his highness to make himself interesting for that old faggot Mrs Riordan that he thought he had a great leg of and she never left us a farthing all for masses for herself and her soul greatest miser ever was actually afraid to lay out 4d



for her methylated spirit telling me all her ailments she had too much old chat in her about politics and earthquakes and the end of the world let us have a bit of fun...

—*Ulysses* by James Joyce

2) 其他非规范用法

非规范用法	说明
Long time no see.	一般认为来自于中文「好久不见」，规范句式可以用 I haven't seen you for a long time.
No can do.	一般认为来自于美国白人嘲讽华裔移民英文不好，规范用法可以用 I cannot do it.
Monkey see, monkey do.	不规范之处有三点：可数名词 monkey 前缺少冠词、主谓不一致、句式粘连。规范句式可以用 A monkey will learn to do something when it sees someone doing it.
There ain't no way.	不规范之处有两点：用 ain't 代替 isn't、ain't ^① 和 no 两次表达否定。规范句式可以用 There is no way.
Did you eat lunch yet?	一般认为 yet 要配合完成时态使用，规范句式可以用 Have you had lunch yet?
me and my friends	规范用法要用 my friends and I

^① 在非规范语言中，用 ain't 表示 am not、is not、are not、has not 和 have not，一般不建议使用。



第八章 长难句

8.1 难点总结 ☆☆☆

8.1.1 as 的用法

1) as 的词性、词义与接续方法

as 的用法复杂，主要在于其词性和词义多且缺乏对应关系，但是通过仔细分析归纳不难发现：

① 表示「随着」「因为」「尽管」等三种词义时，as 必然是连词，引导状语从句，即[as 连词引导词 + 完整句子]时间/原因/让步状语从句

② 表示「作为」时，as 必然是介词，表示「A = B」的关系，即 A 就是 B，一般后接名词性成分组成介宾短语，做后置定语、状语或补语，即「as 介词 + 名词性成分」介宾短语-后置定语/状语/补语

③ 最复杂的是 as 表示「A ≈ B」的关系，即 A 相当于 B，这种用法横跨介词、关系代词、连词和副词 4 种词性，接续方法各不相同，在不同语境中翻译也略有区别：

▲ 「as 介词 + 名词性成分」介宾短语-状语/补语

▲ 先行词/整句 + (as 关系代词 + 不完整句)定语从句

▲ [as 连词引导词 + 完整句子]方式/比较状语从句

▲ as 副词 + 形容词/副词/介宾短语

词性	接续方法	词义
连词	[as 连词引导词 + 完整句子]时间/原因/让步/方式/比较状语从句	随着
		因为
		尽管
		A ≈ B
关系代词	先行词/整句 + (as 关系代词 + 不完整句)定语从句	▲ 如同 ▲ 像...那样 ▲ 以...方式 ▲ 一样
副词	as 副词 + 形容词/副词/介宾短语	A = B
介词	「as 介词 + 名词性成分」介宾短语-后置定语/状语/补语	作为

① 连词：[as 连词引导词 + 完整句子]时间/原因/让步状语从句（「A ≈ B」见 **③**）

▲ 随着

The best books are the ones that open further as time passes. (2020 年高考)

As the water is pumped out, the vacant space left is compacted by the weight of the earth above. (2018 年 12 月四级一卷)

But to stretch her budget, she began putting in vegetables and fruit — everything from strawberry beds to apple trees — and as her first seedlings grew, her spirits lifted. (2012 年专四)

▲ 因为



That's bad news for the environment — and our wallets — as these outdated devices consume much more energy than the newer ones that do the same things. (2018 年高考)

No agreement was reached in the discussion between the two parties, as either side refuses to soften their positions. (2011 年 6 月六级)

"Thanks" can be useful, as it is able to bridge the divide between the formality of "thank you" and the downright relaxed "cheers". (2012 年专四)

▲ 尽管

as 引导让步状语从句，须用倒装（广义），一般将表语、状语或实义动词前置。

① 表语前置

Child^① as he is, he behaves much like an adult.

Envious as the cool kids may have seemed, Dr. Prinstein's studies show unpleasant consequences. (2019 年高考) = ~~X~~ ^② As the cool kids may have seemed envious, ...

She was beginning to recognize this thing that was approaching to possess her, and she was striving to beat it back with her will — as powerless as her two white slender hands would have been. (2018 年专四)

② 状语前置

As much as some scientists may complain about the new awards, two things seem clear. (2014 考研英语一)

In the library as he spent the whole morning, he didn't read anything.

Carefully as she checked every corner, she couldn't find her phone.

③ 实义动词前置

Try as he might, he could not forget it. (Oxford) = ~~X~~ As he might try, ...

Be that as it may, ... (Oxford)

Delighted^③ as I was by the tomatoes in sight, my happiness deepened when I learned that Brown's Grove Farm is one of the suppliers for Jack Dusty, a newlyopened restaurant at the Sarasota Ritz Carlton, where — luckily for me — I was planning to have dinner that very night. (2015 年高考)

Run as he did, he didn't run fast enough to catch the last train.

② 介词：「as 介词 + 名词性成分」介宾短语-后置定语/状语/补语，表示「作为」 (A = B)

UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization) recently set April 30 as a day to raise awareness of jazz music, its significance, and its potential (as a unifying voice across cultures) 介宾短语-后置定语. (2017 年高考)

^① 若表语是带不定冠词 a/an 的单数可数名词，倒装后不定冠词须省略。

^② as 引导让步状语从句，必须使用倒装（广义）。此处为了方便分析句子结构，将 as 连词提前，并不代表实际使用中可以这样调换 as 的位置，此处以 ~~X~~ 标记。下同。

^③ 此处的 delighted 不是形容词，而是「was 助动词 delighted 实义动词」组成被动语态。



[As a 5-year-old boy] 介宾短语-状语, I couldn't take my eyes off the coin changer fixed to his belt. (2011 年高考)

Today all three generations regard the move <as a success> 介宾短语-补语, giving them a closer relationship than they would have had in separate cities. (2016 年高考)

③ A ≈ B

▲ 先行词/整句 + (as 关系代词 + 不完整句) 定语从句, 「像...那样」、「如同」

① 用于限制性定语从句 (修饰先行词, 常与 the same、such、so、as 连用)

I have **the same** trouble 先行词 (as 关系代词 {you had}) 不完整句 定语从句.

Do you have **such** books 先行词 (as 关系代词 {we like}) 不完整句 定语从句?

There is **so** warm a house 先行词 (as 关系代词 {we want to live in}) 不完整句 定语从句.

She will marry **as** 副词 healthy a man 先行词 (as 关系代词 {she can find}) 不完整句 定语从句.

② 用于非限制性定语从句 (指代整句话)

As I discovered in college, when my hands are busy, my mind stays focused on the here and now. (2017 年 12 月四级二卷)

In fact, **as** is the case in many major life moments, you can't really manage to think beyond the blisters your new shoes are causing. (2010 年专四)

As Abernathy's study of automobile manufacturers has shown, an industry can easily become prisoner of its own investments in cost-cutting techniques, reducing its ability to develop new products. (GMAT)

▲ as 副词 + 形容词/副词/介宾短语, 「一样」

These guys were just **as** 副词 green 形容词 **as** 连词 I was, but in a scarier way: they had recently graduated from the medical school, so they were technically MDs. (2015 年专四)

Ma Shwe had crossed the river and got up the bank and was making her way back **as** 副词 fast 副词 **as** 连词 she could, roaring all the time, but to her calf it was music. (2009 年高考)

You argument is **as** 副词 [off the point] 介宾短语 **as** 介词 his.

▲ 「as 介词 + 名词性成分」 介宾短语-后置定语/状语/补语, 「如同」

Are we, as humans, gaining any insight on how to talk about ourselves and how something as abstract [**as** a Charlie Parker record] 介宾短语-状语 gets us into a dialogue about our emotions and our thoughts? (2017 年高考)

He was treated <**as** a family member> 介宾短语-补语. (2011 年高考)

If you are **so** naive [**as** to ask such a question^①] 介宾短语-状语, I will answer it, but it is not worth wasting words on. (2010 年专八)

① 绝大部分情况下, 介宾短语 = 介词 + 名词性成分, 但是少数情况下, 介词也可以接非谓语动词、介宾短语等构成介宾短语 ([6.3.3-1 介宾短语](#))。



This evening, [as 介词 on every Thursday night]介宾短语-状语, psychologist Maud Lehanne is leading two of France's favorite pastimes, coffee drinking and the "talking cure". (2015年高考)

▲ [as 连词引导词 + 完整句子]方式/比较状语从句

如同/像...那样/以...方式

Many Native Americans value silence and feel it is a basic part of communicating among people, just as 连词引导词 some traditional Chinese and Thai persons do. (2015年高考)

"I try to bring my kids here as 副词 often as 连词引导词 I can," he went on. (2012年12月六级)

The runaway success of The Pickwick Papers, as it is generally known today, secured Dickens's fame. (2017年考研)

The police were opposed to Provo's initiatives and almost as 副词 soon as 连词引导词 the white bikes were distributed around the city, they removed them. (剑桥雅思 14)

从以上例子可以看出，表示「A ≈ B」的关系时，as 介词和 as 连词用法接近，主要以接续方法区分，as 介词后接名词性成分等组成介宾短语，as 连词后接完整句子组成比较状语从句（常省略与主句重复部分），两者往往可以转化。

However, race walking does not pound the body as 副词 much as 连词 running does, Dr. Norberg says. (2020年高考)

↔ However, race walking does not pound the body as 副词 much as 介词 running, Dr. Norberg says.

The occasional flooding of western forests to make them as 副词 wet as 介词 those in the East. (托福 TPO39)

↔ The occasional flooding of western forests to make them as 副词 wet as 连词 those in the East are.

It is important, but not as 副词 important as 连词 is the ability to appear knowledgeable. (GRE)

↔ It is important, but not as 副词 important as 介词 the ability to appear knowledgeable.

类似地，表示「A ≈ B」的关系时，as + X 也往往可以有两种分析：

The issue is not the need for more houses but, [as 介词 always 副词]介宾短语-状语, where to put them. (2016年考研)

↔ The issue is not the need for more houses but, as 连词 ()省略 it (the issue) has always 副词 ()省略 been, where to put them.

While Queensland Rail makes every effort to ensure trains run [as 介词 scheduled 过去分词]介宾短语-状语, there can be no guarantee of connections between trains or between train services and bus services. (2020年高考)



↔ While Queensland Rail makes every effort to ensure trains run as 连词 ()省略 it is scheduled 过去分词, there can be no guarantee of connections between trains or between train services and bus services.

2) as...as... ([2.3.4-1 平级比较](#))

3) as 词组

上文仔细区分了 as 的词义、词性和接续方法, 对于 as...as...等词组也拆分辨别, 这在语法分析上是有意义的。但是在语言学习中, 这些词组往往被视为整体, 无需仔细区分其内部结构。

▲ as follows 如下

One explanation is *the law of overlearning*, which can be stated **as follows**: Once we have learned something, additional learning trials increase the length of time we will remember it. (2012年高考)

▲ as from/ as of 自...起、截止到

as from/of April (Oxford)

For young adults without a bachelor's degree, **as of** 2008 living at home with their parents was more prevalent than living with a romantic partner. (2019年6月四级二卷)

▲ as for/ as to/ as regards 关于/至于

As for the organization itself, it declined a request for an interview. (2018年6月四级二卷)

By discussing these with others, we receive feedback **as to** whether these are experiences which others have as well, or whether they are less common. (2012年12月六级)

Anything we try to do **as regards** immigration laws has to be done in the context of a huge welfare state that is already a major, inescapable fact of life. (2014年6月六级三卷)

▲ as against 和...相比

The figure was 75% this year, **as against** 35% last year. (Oxford)

The ability of most people to see all the colors of the visible spectrum **as against** most people's inability to name any but the primary colors (GRE)

▲ as and when 当...时

Drop in **as and when** you want. (Oxford)

▲ as if/ as though 好像 ([2.3.1-7 方式状语从句](#))

When we are deprived of green, of plants, of trees, most of us give in to a demoralization of spirit which we usually blame on some psychological conditions, until one day we find ourselves in a garden and feel the oppression vanish **as if** by magic. (2013年考研)

I suddenly heard an elephant crying **as though** frightened. (2009年高考)



▲ asap ['eɪsæp] = as soon as possible 尽快

Do it, **asap!**

Mary should get rid of her pet **as soon as possible.** (2013 年 12 月六级一卷)

▲ such as 比如

Especially globalisation and better communications in the past few decades, all have caused many Languages to disappear, and dominant languages **such as** English, Spanish and Chinese are increasingly taking over. (2018 年高考)

▲ so as to 为了

Wireless devices will transmit signals **so as to** activate the alarm once something wrong is detected. (2016 年 12 月四级一卷)

8.1.2 that 的用法

that 的词义很简单，用法却非常复杂，但是通过仔细分析归纳不难发现其用法可分为两大类：

1 that 做限定词、副词、指示代词时，必然表示「那」（那个、那样、那种、那么），此时 that 单独使用，或后接其他词，组成词组

2 that 做引导词时，必然后接一个句子（完整或不完整），组成某种从句或感叹句

词义	词性	用法	
▲ 那个 ▲ 那样 ▲ 那种 ▲ 那么	限定词	名词词组	that 限定词 + 名词
	副词	形容词词组	that 副词 + 形容词
		副词词组	that 副词 + 副词
	指示代词	代词	that 指示代词
	关系代词 关系副词	定语从句	先行词 + that 关系代词 + 不完整句
			先行词 + that 关系副词 + 完整句子
虚义	引导词	名词性从句	that 连词引导词 + 完整句子
		状语从句	that 连词引导词 + 完整句子
		感叹句	That 连词引导词 + 完整句子

1) that 做限定词、副词、指示代词

1 限定词，表示「那个」，用于名词词组

Not **that** one!

2 副词，表示「那么」，修饰形容词、副词、介宾短语等

You're not **that** stupid 形容词. (Oxford)

No one can run **that** fast 副词.

I have never seen an argument **that** [off the point] 介宾短语.

3 指示代词

▲ 表示「那个」

That's his wife over there.

That's that! 就这么定了！ (Oxford)



Most businesses seek to make a profit--**that** is (to say), they aim to achieve income that is more than the costs of operating the business. (2013 年高考)

▲ 表示「那样」

- He's a fussy guy.
- He is **that**. (Oxford)

2) **that** 做引导词

① 引导定语从句

▲ 关系代词：先行词 + (**that** 关系代词 + 不完整句) 定语从句，关系代词 that 表示「那个」「那样」，在定语从句中做主语、宾语、补语等。

主语：Then there's the kind of popularity **that** appears in adolescence: status born of power and even dishonorable behavior. (2019 年高考)

宾语：The best exercise is one **that** you enjoy and will do. (2018 年高考)

表语：He still talks like the man **that** he was ten years ago.

宾补：I'm no longer the fool **that** you made me last time.

▲ 关系副词：替代 when、where、why、for which、in which 等，常与 day、place、reason、way 等表示时间、地点、原因、方式的词连用。

the night **that**=when she arrived (Oxford)

I don't know any place **that** you can get a better deal.

Artificial intelligence is embedded in many features of modern life for the simple reason **that**=why intelligent machines can already outperform humans, including some aptitudes where there was once thought to be a human advantage, such as playing chess, and writing poetry, or even novels. (2017 年专四)

The exact time and place **that**=when/where crops were first cultivated successfully is uncertain. (托福 TPO33)

In theory, interactive advertising can engage viewers in a way **that**=in which 30-second spots do not. (2016 年 6 月六级一卷)

② 引导名词性从句

▲ 连词：{**that** 连词引导词 + 完整句子} 名词性从句，无具体词义。

主语从句：It turns out **that** just looking at green, growing things can reduce stress, lower blood pressure, and put people into a better mood. (2019 年高考)

宾语从句：They found **that** more on-demand entertainment viewing on tablets instead of TVs and desktop computers could cut energy consumption by 44%. (2018 年高考)

表语：The general rule is **that** mild zones have relatively few languages. (2018 年高考)

其他补语从句：He seemed pleased **that** I wanted to continue.^①

^① 传统语法认为这是形容词带的宾语从句，本书认为是补语从句（[6.2.2 补语](#)）。



同位语从句：There's a welcome familiarity — but also sometimes a slight suspicion that time has changed you both, and thus the relationship. (2020 年高考)

③ 引导状语从句

▲ 连词：[**that** 连词引导词 + 完整句子]状语从句，引导状语从句的 that 无具体词义，一般与其他词组合成 provided that、given that、now that、in case that、in order that、in the event that、such...that...、so that...、so...that...等，整体视为引导词，引导条件、目的或结果状语从句。

A picnic will be very pleasant, provided (that) we get good weather. (Oxford)

Given that a fundamental goal of education is to transfer the control of learning from teachers to pupils, improving pupils' learning to learn techniques should be a major outcome of the school experience, especially for the highly competent. (剑桥雅思 10)

Now that you've listed your strengths, list your imperfections. (2020 年高考)

Even those artists who were most dependent on photography became reluctant to admit that they made use of it, in case this compromised their professional standing. (托福 TPO22)

In order that you can sign the form, please print it out and mail it to this address. (Cambridge)

In the event that I can't come back by seven, you can eat without me. (Collins)

An actor and actress stood in front of the scene so that they looked as if they were at the water's edge on an island. (2012 年高考)

He is such a bad-tempered person that no one can work with him for long. (Cambridge)

③ 引导感叹句

▲ 连词：{**That** 连词引导词 + 完整句子}感叹句，无具体词义，往往用虚拟语气，表示震惊或愿望。

That he should say such horrible things! 🌐

Oh **that** I could go back to my childhood! 🌐

Oh **that** she were with me now! 🌐

3) 引导词 that 的省略 (☞ 7.4-3 语法省略)

引导词 that 引导感叹句不可省略，引导定语从句、名词性从句、状语从句均可能出现省略。

① 引导定语从句 (☞ 2.2.3-3 关系词的省略)

▲ 关系代词在限制性定语从句中做宾语时可省略。

the girl (**that**) I saw (Oxford)

It also doesn't require a new type of technology (**that**) people aren't already familiar with. (2019 年高考)

▲ 关系代词在限制性定语从句中做表语时可省略。

He still talks like the man (**that**) he was ten years ago. 🌐

She finally became the singer (**that**) she always wanted to be. 🌐



▲ 关系代词在限制性定语从句中做主语，且从句内部是 there be 结构时可省略。

This is the fastest train (**that**) there has ever been.

He asked for the latest book (**that**) there was on the subject.

▲ 定语从句符合「关系代词 be X」的结构，可省略「关系代词 be」，变为 X 做后置定语/同位语。X 可能是非谓语动词，也可能是名词、形容词、介宾短语等。

She will the person (**who/that is**) to give a speech tomorrow.

"It takes a lot for any student," Whaley explains, "especially for a student (**who/that is**) learning English as their new language, to feel confident enough to say, 'I don't know, but I want to know.'" (2019 年高考)

People (**who/that are**) motivated by pleasure seem to suffer particularly badly. (剑桥雅思 13)

Zhang Qiaofeng, (**who/that is**) a Peking University graduate, has quitted his job to educate his own 8-year-old boy and other youngsters, told the Global Times that he withdrew his son from primary school after a month. (2012 年专八)

Through association with people (**who/that are**) meaningful to us, we achieve a sense of security, love, acceptance, companionship, and personal worth. (托福 TPO12)

An age (**that is**) all about growth and risk needs some anchors and weights, a model of steadfastness when all else is in flux. (2015 年专八)

▲ 上述 that 代替关系副词 when/ where/ why 的情况，往往可省略 that。

the reason (**that**) I phoned (Oxford)

the way (**that**) she works (Oxford)

the night (**that**) she arrived (Oxford)

② 引导名词性从句 (2.1.3-1 名词性从句中的省略)

▲ 宾语从句的引导词 that 往往可以省略。

Teach your teenager (**that**) the family phone is for the whole family. (2009 年高考)

Many ecologists now think (**that**) the relative long-term stability of climax communities comes not from diversity but from the "patchiness" of the environment, an environment that varies from place to place supports more kinds of organisms than an environment that is uniform. (托福 TPO3)

As I think about people who inadvertently invested in lives of hollow unhappiness, I can't help believing (**that**) their troubles relate right back to a short-term perspective. (2014 年专八)

▲ 非正式文体中，名词词性从句的引导词 that 如果省略句意仍然清晰则可以省略。

主语从句：It's great (**that**) you've come in time.

补语从句：I'm glad (**that**) the whole business is over and done with.

③ 引导状语从句



引导词 that 引导状语从句时，与其他词组成 provided that、given that、now that、in case that、in order that、in the event that、such...that...、so that...、so...that... 等整体引导词，此时 that 一般不省略，但是在上下文语义清晰的情况下，可以省略 that。

Even those artists who were most dependent on photography became reluctant to admit that they made use of it, in case (that) this compromised their professional standing. (托福 TPO22)

8.1.3 it 的用法

第三人称单数代词 it 词性简单，词义和用法却比较复杂。it 的用法笼统来说可以分为两类，一是词汇功能，包括具体指代「它」或模糊指代某种笼统的情况；二是语法功能，用于形式主语、形式宾语、强调句等。

词义	用法	结构
它	词汇功能	具体指代
一般情况等		模糊指代
虚义	语法功能	形式主语
		形式宾语
		强调句

1) 词汇功能

① 具体指代

前文已经提及的某物/某事，或者语境中明确的某物/某事，用 it 指代。

He took a quick look at the house and noticed **it** was very old. (Merriam-Webster)

My wife has become crippled by arthritis. She is embarrassed to ask the doctor about **it.** (Collins)

— Where's the car?

— **It's** in the garage. (Oxford)

② 模糊指代

① 表示一般情况

How's **it** going? (Oxford)

I like **it** here. (Oxford)

That's **it.** (Oxford)

② 表示气候、天气、温度、时间、地点、距离等

It is raining. (Oxford)

It is two o'clock. (Oxford)

It's two miles to town. (Oxford)

③ 表示某种素质

Either you've got **it** or you haven't. (Oxford) 你要么是好样的，要么一无是处。

④ 表示性别未知的人



Who is it? (Merriam-Webster)

He promised to support the child after it was born. (Collins)

2) 语法功能

1 做形式主语

It is necessary {to repeat the whole thing}真正的主语. (Merriam-Webster)

It's no use shouting 真正的主语. (Oxford)

It appears {that he is sleeping}真正的主语. (Oxford)

So **it's** no surprise {that the Maker Movement today is thriving in communities and some schools across America}真正的主语. (2019年6月四级三卷)

☆☆☆ To keep batches of tokens together, an innovation was introduced (circa 3250 B.C.E.) whereby they were sealed inside clay envelopes that could be broken open and counted when **it** came {time for a debt to be repaid}真正的主语. (TPO52R1)

2 做形式宾语

She made **it** clear (that) we were not welcome. (Oxford)

I find **it** ludicrous that nothing has been done to protect passengers from fire. (Collins)

I deem **it** fitting that we mark this solemn occasion with a day of prayer and thanksgiving. (Merriam-Webster)

3 用于强调句

It's Spain that he went to, not Portugal. (Oxford)

It's really these countries that have the worst environmental records. (Collins)

It was I who found him there. (Collins)

8.1.4 be 的用法

be 动词的用法复杂，首先体现为其变形多样，总结如下表：

原形	一般式/现在式		过去式	不定式	过去分词	现在分词/动名词
be	第一人称	单数	am	was	to be	being
	第三人称		is			
	第二人称	复数	are	were		

be 动词的用法复杂，更在于其词性复杂，以及对应的词义复杂。

词性	词义	用法	
助动词	虚义	进行时态	be 助动词 + doing
		完成进行时态	have been 助动词 + done
		被动语态	be 助动词 + done
系动词	「是」	「主系表」句型	S + be 系动词 + Cs



不及物动词	「存在」 「造访」 「发生」等	「主谓」句型	S + be ^{vi}
-------	--------------------	--------	----------------------

快速判断方法

根据上述总结，可以总结出判断 be 动词词性的快速方法。去掉主语，在 be 前面加 Don't.

① 如果句子不成立，则 be 是助动词^①。

✗ Don't be writing. → I am writing. I have been writing. 其中的 am、been 是助动词。

✗ Don't be killed. → He was killed. He will be killed. 其中的 was、be 是助动词。

② 如果句子成立，则 be 是系动词。

✓ Don't be a simp. → You are a simp. He had been Fiona's simp before he met Linda.

I will never be anyone's simp! 其中的 are、been、be 是系动词。

✓ Don't be careless! → I am careless. He has always been careless. She won't be careless. 其中的 am、been、be 是系动词。

✓ Don't be off the point. 不要偏题。→ He was off the point. 其中的 was 是系动词。

1) 助动词 be ([5.1.1 助动词](#))

be 动词做助动词时，无具体词义。

① 进行时态 ([5.2.3 进行时态](#))

▲ 现在进行时

The engineers are also trying to develop an on and off "switch" where the glow would fade when exposed to daylight. (2020 年高考)

▲ 过去进行时

The train was departing when I got there. (Oxford)

▲ 将来进行时

He will be working somewhere else. (2019 年 6 月四级二卷)

▲ 过去将来进行时

People would be working only fifteen hours a week now. (2019 年 6 月六级二卷)

② 完成进行时态 ([5.2.4 完成进行时态](#))

▲ 现在完成进行时

Mr. Ball argues that some of the reasons have been building for the last few years.
(2011 年高考)

▲ 过去完成进行时

^①注意，此方法不适用于 be 动词做不及物动词，因为 be 动词做不及物动词时，虽然是实义动词，但是一般无法改写为 Don't be...的形式。比如 Have you been to London? 中的 been 是不及物动词，表示「造访」，但是 Don't be to London.不成立。



Next I checked the log of his vital signs and saw that his respiration and heart rate **had been climbing**, but his temperature was steady. (2015 年专四)

▲ 将来完成进行时

The play is coming off in August. By then the play **will have been running** for three months.

▲ 过去将来完成进行时

Up to that time he **would have been translating** those books.

3 被动语态 (5.3 语态)

The child **was found** by the search party. (Oxford)

Among the great cities of the world, Kolkata (formerly spelt as Calcutta), the capital of India's West Bengal, and the home of nearly 15 million people, **is often mentioned** as the only one that still has a large fleet of hand-pulled rickshaws. (2010 年专八)

Artifacts that **would have been displayed** in public places **will be sold** to private collectors. (GMAT)

2) 系动词 be (6.1.5-1 主系表 SV_LC_s)

be 动词做系动词时，用于「主系表」句型，接续方法为：S + be + Cs，表语 Cs 可以是名词、形容词、介宾短语、名词性从句等。

1 be = 「是」

一般来说，系动词 be 只有「是」一个基本词义。

The 17th and 18th centuries **were** times **of radical change and curiosity.** (2020 年考研英语一)

This position **is** equally suitable **for a school leaver or for somebody who has office experience.** (2011 年高考)

It **is** worth **noting that the overall share of young adults living with their parents was not 「at a record high」** **in 2014.** (2019 年 6 月四级二卷)

The protectionist hypothesis **is that extrafloral nectar attracts ants, and that the ants, in order to preserve this energy-rich food source, attack insects that might harm the plant.** (托福 TPO34)

2 be = 其他词义

在具体的句子中，系动词 be 可以灵活翻译为其他词义。

▲ 扮演：I **was** Juliet in the school play. (Oxford)

▲ 等于：Two times three **is** six. (Oxford)

▲ 值：How much **are** those eggs? (Oxford)



3) 不及物动词 be (☞ 5.1.2-1 实义动词的分类)

be 动词做不及物动词时，词义比较复杂，一般用于「主谓」句型，部分情况下可以分析为「主谓补」句型，或者将 be 动词与介词整体理解为动词词组。

① 表示「存在」「持续」

I think, therefore I am. 我思，故我在。 — René Descartes

To be or not to be, that's the question! — William Shakespeare

Let it be. — The Beatles

② 表示「造访」

Have you ever been to London? (Oxford)^①

③ 表示「发生」

They made plans to marry, but it was not to be. (Oxford)

8.1.5 have 的用法

原形	一般式/现在式		过去式	不定式	过去分词	现在分词/动名词
have	have		had	to have	had	having
	第三人称单数	has				

8.2 长难句分析 ☆☆☆

长难句在阅读中很常见，需要使用语法进行分析。长难句分析能力也能检查写作中的句子在语法上是否成立。

1) 长难句分析的基本原则和实用技巧

① 语法、语义、语感综合考虑

语法并非独立于语义和语感之外的。一个英语句子除了语法上要正确，语义上也要通顺，还要符合语感上的直觉。在做语法分析时，可以从语感上取得一个初步的结论，还可以用语义去反向验证一些语法上不确定的细节。

Church rolls suggest there were 1.1m Mormons in Brazil in 2010, but only about 227,000 Brazilians identified as Mormon in the census the same year. (*The Economist* 20220108)

单看这一句，identified 是过去式或过去分词，句子在语法和语义上似乎都是成立的。

- ① 如果 identified 是过去式，则 identified 视为不及物动词，identified (vi.) as... 表示「自认是...」「认同...身份」。

^① 此句可分析为「主谓补」句型，或将 have been to 整体视为谓语动词词组。



The screenshot shows the Merriam-Webster dictionary page for the word 'identify'. The header includes links for GAMES & QUIZZES, THESAURUS, WORD OF THE DAY, FEATURES, and SHOP. Below the header, the word 'identify' is defined with two meanings. Meaning 2 is highlighted with a red box: '2 : to have or assert an identity of a specified kind'. An example sentence follows: 'Of the high school students who participated, 77% identified as female, 20% identified as male, 2% identified as nonbinary ...' attributed to Elizabeth Beyer.

2 : to have or assert an identity of a specified kind

// Of the high school students who participated, 77% *identified* as female, 20% *identified* as male, 2% *identified* as nonbinary ...

— Elizabeth Beyer

整句表示「教堂名册显示 2010 年巴西有 110 万摩门教徒，但是在同年人口普查中，只有大约 227000 巴西人自认为是摩门教徒」。

- ② 如果 identified 是过去分词，则 identified 是及物动词过去分词做后置定语，相当于定语从句的省略：227,000 Brazilians identified as Mormon = 227,000 Brazilians (省略 that were) identified as Mormon。

整句主干即：there were 1.1m Mormons but only 227000 Brazilians identified as Mormon。

The screenshot shows the Merriam-Webster dictionary page for the word 'identify'. The header includes links for GAMES & QUIZZES, THESAURUS, WORD OF THE DAY, FEATURES, and SHOP. Below the header, the word 'identify' is defined with two meanings. Meaning b (1) is highlighted with a red box: 'b (1) : to ascertain the identity of (someone or something that is unfamiliar or unknown)'. Examples follow: 'He was able to quickly *identify* the problem.', 'Police have *identified* a person of interest.', and 'Dr. McGovern explains that "identifying the cause of the disease is a breakthrough. ..."'. Attributed to — The Chronicle of the Horse.

b (1) : to ascertain the identity of (someone or something that is unfamiliar or unknown)

// He was able to quickly *identify* the problem.

// Police have *identified* a person of interest.

// Dr. McGovern explains that "identifying the cause of the disease is a breakthrough. ..."

— The Chronicle of the Horse

整句表示「教堂名册显示 2010 年巴西有 110 万摩门教徒，但是在同年人口普查中，只有大约 227000 巴西人被认为是摩门教徒」。

但是从语义上看，第二种分析内部自相矛盾：如果 one point one million Mormons 和 only 227000 Brazilians 并列，又都是 Church rolls suggest 的内容，就说明这个 Church rolls 内部前后矛盾，前半句说教徒数量是 110 万，后半句又说只有 22 万多。另外，这也不符合一般常识，现在国家一般都是宗教信仰自由的，宗教身份不需要他人来确定。所以，通过语法、语义，甚至背景知识，最终确定分析①是正确的。

② 先主干后修饰，先整体后细节

对于整个句子，首先区分句子的主、谓、宾、补等核心成分，确定句子基本句型，再分析定、状、同位等修饰性成分。对于复杂结构，可以先整体理解，判断其相对于其他部分的外部结构，再细致分析其内部结构。



What I'm hoping to accomplish is that my generation and younger start to reconsider and understand that jazz is not black and white anymore. (2017 年高考)

首先将整句分析为：{What I'm hoping to accomplish}主语 is {that my generation and younger start to reconsider and understand that jazz is not black and white anymore}表语从句。

第二步再分析主语从句：What I'm hoping to accomplish

= | 主语 「am hoping to accomplish」 谓语动词 what 宾语

第三步分析表语从句：that my generation and younger start to reconsider and understand that jazz is not black and white anymore

= that 引导词 + 完整句 {my generation and younger}主语 「start to reconsider and understand」 谓语动词 {that jazz is not black and white anymore}宾语从句

最后再分析表语从句中包含的宾语从句：that jazz is not black and white anymore

= that 引导词 + 完整句 jazz 主语 is not <black and white> 表语 anymore

3 不涉争议，适可而止

语法中存在不少争议。一般语言学习者做长难句语法分析，主要是帮助理解句意。对于语法争议点，有兴趣可以了解各方观点，但是不必纠结争议内容。对于可以整体理解的结构，也不必纠结每一个词的词性和语法功能。

I'm not sure whether I should tell you this. (Oxford)

= ..sure 形容词-表语 {whether I should tell you this}宾语从句.

/ ..sure 形容词-表语 <whether I should tell you this>补语从句.

名词性从句「whether I should tell you this」，传统语法认为是 sure 形容词 带的宾语从句。本书认为是补语从句。两种不同的解释在各自的语法体系中均能自洽，一般语言学习者只要理解句意即可。

This gave them no clue as to his motives. (Oxford)

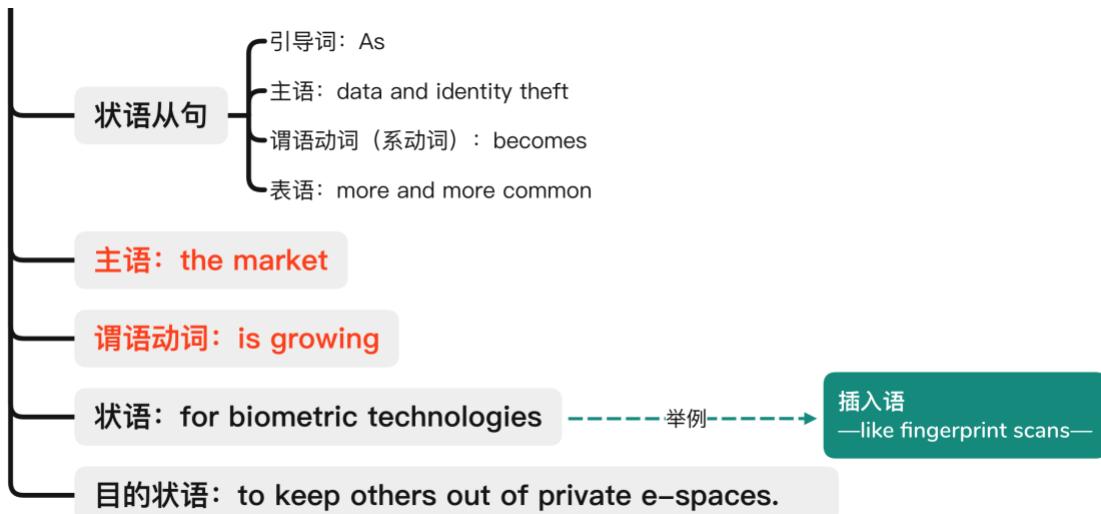
= ...[as to 介词 his motives]状语

将「as to」整体视为是一个介词即可——本书称为复合介词 (compound preposition)，不必纠结其中的 as 是什么词性、to 是什么词性。只需要知道 as to his motives 整体构成一个介宾短语，做句子的状语。

4 善用标点

在实际长难句分析中，要合理利用逗号、破折号、引号、括号等标点符号，标点符号往往标记句子内部结构。比如两个逗号、破折号、括号之间的内容，往往先分析为插入语，等句子主干部分分析清楚之后再分析其具体成分，往往是同位语、状语、定语等；引号内的内容也往往视为一个整体。

As data and identity theft becomes more and more common, the market is growing for biometric technologies — like fingerprint scans — to keep others out of private e-spaces. (2019 年高考)



其中, 「— like fingerprint scans —」显然可以视为插入语, 暂时忽略不看, 等句子分析完成之后再来分析其具体成分。

5 善用标志词

类似地, 要合理利用从句引导词、并列连词、助动词等标志词, 这些标志词往往也标记句子内部结构。

In *Save Money: Good Food*, she visits a different home each week and with the help of chef Matt Tebbutt offers top tips on how to reduce food waste, while preparing recipes for under £5 per family a day. (2018 年高考)



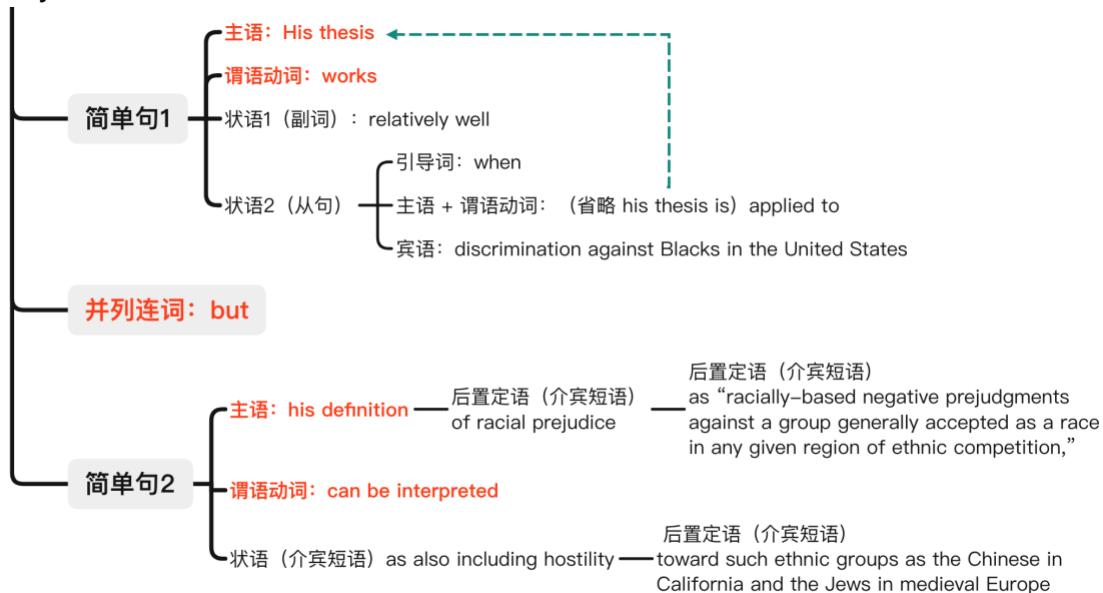
其中, 「while」显然是状语从句的引导词, 因此可以快速将「while doing...」判定为状语。类似地, 「although」必然引导状语从句, 「having...」则往往是非谓语动词做伴随状语。



6 紧扣动词

利用标点符号和标志词将句子划分为多个部分之后，就需要紧扣动词判定句子主干、时态、语态等内容。

At the turn of the century, by contrast, most Black poets generally wrote in the conventional manner of the age and expressed noble, if vague, emotions in their poetry. (GRE)



注释：



上例中，3个逗号将句子划分为4个部分，只有第三部分「most Black people...」中有动词 wrote...and...expressed，所以这个部分必然是主句。

2) 长难句分析的符号和工具

为了便于实际长难句分析，可以约定一套语法分析符号规则。本书使用的语法分析符号如下：

1 括号

定语：(...), (...)前置定语、(...)后置定语

省略：(...), (...)可省、(...)必省

状语：[...]

补语：<...>

名词性成分：{...}

动词词组：「...」

2 上标：以上标记性质与功能

(...)形容词-定语



[...]副词-状语

<...>名词-补语

{...}主语

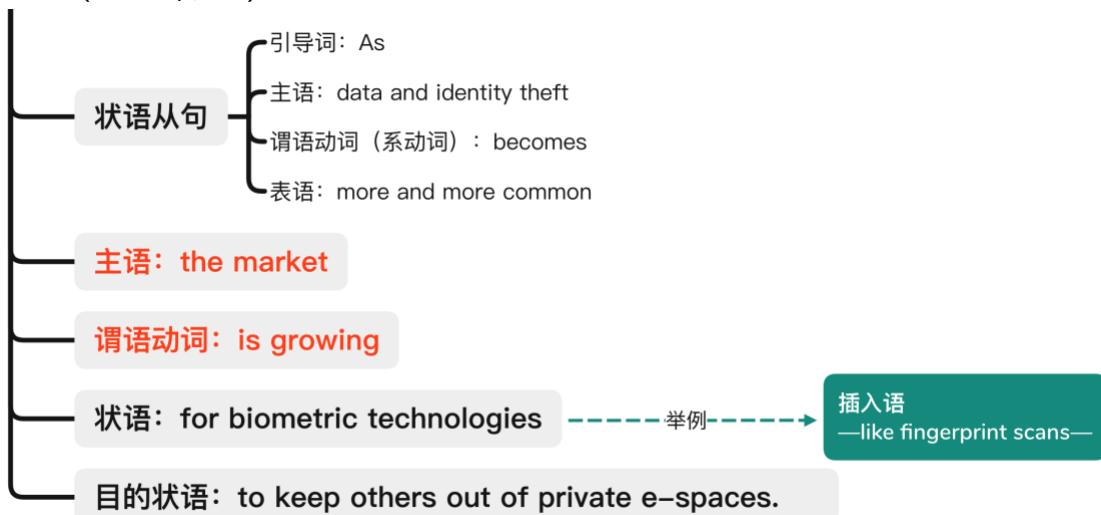
3 格式

加粗：需要突出部分

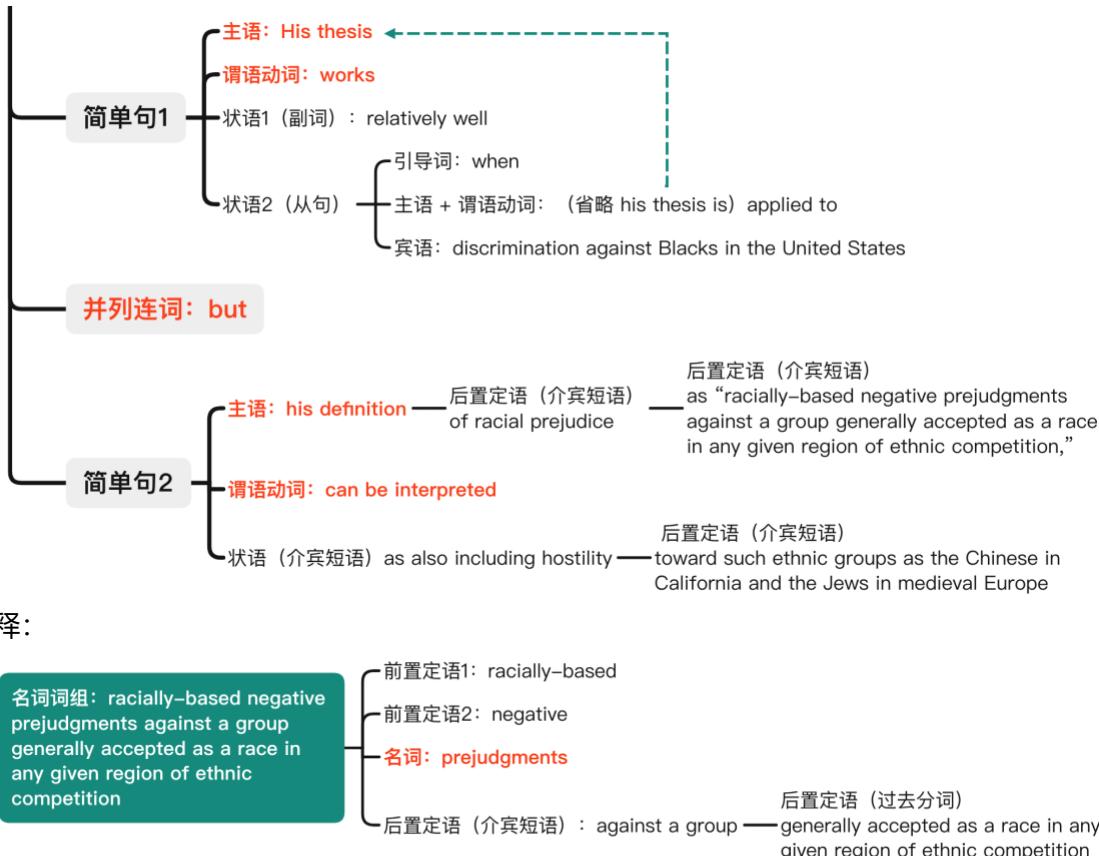
下划线：从句

在实际长难句分析中，可以使用脑图软件做语法分析，比纯文字标记更能展现句子结构。

As data and identity theft becomes more and more common, the market is growing for biometric technologies — like fingerprint scans — to keep others out of private e-spaces. (2019 年高考)



His thesis works relatively well when applied to discrimination against Blacks in the United States, but his definition of racial prejudice as "racially-based negative prejudgments against a group generally accepted as a race in any given region of ethnic competition," can be interpreted as also including hostility toward such ethnic groups as the Chinese in California and the Jews in medieval Europe. (GRE)



3) 长难句 100 (附录五 长难句 100)

有具体考试需求的同学可以利用相应真题中的阅读部分练习长难句分析。

如果没有具体考试需求，或者想由简至难系统地练习长难句分析，则可以使用下述「长难句 100」，即精选自高考英语、四级、六级、考研英语、雅思、托福、专四、专八、SAT、GMAT、GRE 等英语考试阅读真题的 100 个长难句。顾名思义，这些长难句是上述考试中较长较难的句子，所以即便是高考英语的长难句也值得用于长难句分析练习。这 100 个长难句按难度排序，可以满足绝大多数同学的长难句分析需求。使用这种系统编排的材料，可以清晰地了解自己的语法实用水平。



附录一 名词复数表

大多数英语名词由单数名词加-s 或-es 构成复数，称为规则复数 (regular plural)。但是少数名词不符合此规则，称为不规则复数 (irregular plural)。

1) 规则复数规则

名词	变化	例子
普通名词	加 s	apple → apples cat → cats month → months
以-s、-x、-z、-sh、-ch 结尾的	加 es	gas → gases class → classes buzz → buzzes box → boxes church → churches bench → benches
以辅音字母 + y 结尾的 以 quy 结尾的	变 y 为 i 再加 es	factory → factories lady → ladies party → parties sky → skies spy → spies university → universities soliloquy → soliloquies
某些以辅音 + o 结尾的 ^①	加 es	potato → potatoes echo → echoes hero → heroes veto → vetoes embargo → embargoes tomato → tomatoes torpedo → torpedoes
少数以 f 或 fe 结尾的 ^②	变 f 或 fe 为 v，再加 es	live → lives half → halves shelf → shelves

^① 少数以辅音 + o 结尾的名词，加 s 或 es 两可，比如 archipelago → archipelagos/ archipelagoes manifesto → manifestos/ manifestoes、motto → mottos/ mottoes、volcano → volcanos/ volcanoes。

^② 少数以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词，既可以直接加 s，也可以加变 f 或 fe 为 v 再加 es，比如 dwarf → dwarf/dwarves、handkerchief → handkerchiefs/handkerches、scarf → scarfs/scarves、hoof → hoof/hooves。



		calf → calves thief → thieves self → selves knife → knives leaf → leaves wolf → woves loaf → loaves
--	--	---

2) 不规则复数表

① 单复同形

分类	单数	复数	基本词义
动物	bison		野牛
	cod		鳕鱼
	deer		鹿
	fish		鱼
	moose		驼鹿
	perch		鲈鱼
	sheep		羊
	trout		鲑鱼
国民	Chinese		中国人
	Japanese		日本人
	Portuguese		葡萄牙人
	Swiss		瑞士人
	Vietnamese		越南人
-craft	aircraft		飞行器
	hovercraft		气垫船
	spacecraft		航天器
集合名词	barracks		营房
	crossroads		十字路口
	headquarters		总部
	means		手段
	offspring		后代
	series		系列
	species		物种
	works		作品

② 外来词



很多外来语词的词复数不规则。部分源于外来语的科技词汇有不规则复数和规则复数两种，一般不规则复数用于科技文体，规则复数则用于日常文体。

▲ um → a (源自拉丁文的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
stratum	strata		地层
addendum	addenda	addendums	补遗
agendum	agenda		议程
bacterium	bacteria		细菌
datum	data		数据
memorandum	memoranda	memorandums	备忘录
millennium	millennia		千年
curriculum	curricula	curriculums	课程
sanatorium	sanatoria	sanatoriums	疗养院
medium	media	mediums	媒介

▲ us → i/era/ora/es (源自拉丁文的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
alumnus	alumni		男校友
bacillus	bacilli		病菌
cactus	cacti	cactuses	仙人掌
focus	foci	focuses	焦点
fungus	fungi		真菌
nucleus	nuclei	nucleuses	核心
radius	radii	radiuses	半径
stimulus	stimuli		刺激
syllabus	syllabi		教学大纲
terminus	termini	terminuses	终点
uterus	uteri		子宫
corpus	corpora		语料库
genus	genera		属
viscus	viscera		内脏
census	censuses		人口普查

▲ a → ae (源自拉丁文的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
alumna	alumnae		女校友
antenna	antennae	antennas	触角



formula	formulae	formulas	方程
---------	----------	----------	----

▲ is → es (源自拉丁文的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
basis	bases		基础
analysis	analyses		分析
antithesis	antitheses		对立物
axis	axes		轴
crisis	crises		危机
diagnosis	diagnoses		诊断
ellipsis	ellipses		省略
hypothesis	hypotheses		假设
parenthesis	parentheses		括号
thesis	theses		论文

▲ on → a (源自拉丁文的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
criterion	criteria		标准
phenomenon	phenomena		现象

▲ ex/ie/ix → ices (源自拉丁文的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
apex	apices	apexes	顶点
appendix	appendices	appendices	附录
codex	codices		法典
index	indices	indexes	索引
matrix	matrices		矩阵
vertex	vertices		顶点
die	dices	dies	骰子

▲ eau → eaux (源自法语的词)

单数	不规则复数	规则复数	基本词义
beau	beaux	beaus	花花公子
bureau	bureaux	bureaus	局
château	châteaux		庄园
plateau	plateaux	plateaus	高原



▲ ma → mata (源自希腊语的词)

单数	复数	基本词义
dogma	dogmata	教条
schema	schemata	纲要
stigma	stigmata	耻辱
stoma	stomata	气孔

▲ -om/ot (源自希伯来语的词)

单数	复数	基本词义
cherub	cherubim	小天使
matzah	matzot	无酵饼
seraph	seraphim	六翼天使

③ 古英语词

▲ oo → ee (源自古英语的词)

单数	复数	基本词义
foot	feet	脚
goose	geese	鹅
tooth	teeth	牙齿

▲ ou → i (源自古英语的词)

单数	复数	基本词义
mouse	mice	老鼠
louse	lice	虱子

▲ -en (源自古英语的词)

单数	复数	基本词义
man	men	男人
woman	women	女人
child	children	儿童
ox	oxen	公牛



附录二 动词变形表

英语中的动词有多种变形，包括第三人称单数、ing 形式、过去式、过去分词等。大多数动词的变形都符合通用规则，但是少数动词的变形不符合此规则，称为不规则动词（irregular verb）。

1) 第三人称单数规则

动词	变化	例子
普通动词	加 s	abandon → abandons demand → demands reflect → reflects
以-ch ^① 、 -o、 -s、 -sh、 -x、 -z 结尾的	加 es	watch → watches go → goes miss → misses mix → mixes buzz → buzzes
以辅音字母 + y 结尾的 ^②	变 y 为 i，再加 es	study → studies try → tries
不规则动词		be → am/is have → has

2) 加 ing 规则

动词	变化	例子
普通动词	直接加 ing	read → reading wash → washing
以不发音字母 e 结尾的	去掉 e，再加 ing	ride → riding make → making write → writing
以字母 ie 结尾的	将变 ie 为 y，再加 ing	die → dying lie → lying tie → tying
以 c 结尾的 ^③	变 c 为 ck，再加 ing	picnic → picnicking magic → magicking traffic → trafficking

^① 如果 ch 前是元音字母时，ch 发 [k]，则直接加 s，比如 stomachs。

^② 以元音字母 + y 结尾的动词，直接加-s，比如 plays。

^③ 例外比如 picnic → picnicking。



以重读闭音节结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的 (字母 w、y、x 除外) ①	双写最后的辅音字母，再加 ing	run → running swim → swimming
以非重读音节结尾且以 l 或 p 结尾的	英式：双写最后的辅音字母，再加 ing	travel → travelling worship → worshipping handicap → handicapping
	美式：直接加 ing	travel → traveling worship → worshiping handicap → handicaping

3) 过去式和过去分词规则

大多数动词的过去式和过去分词都是在动词原形的后面加上-ed，但是少数不规则动词的变形不符合此规则——大多数不规则动词都是过去时和过去分词变形不规则。

1 AAA 型

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
	bet		赌博
	broadcast		广播
	burst		爆炸
	cast		抛掷
	cost		花费
	cut		切割
forecast	forecasted/forecast		预报
	hurt		伤害
	hit		击打
	let		让
	put		放置
	read		阅读
	rid		摆脱
quit	quitted/quit		退出
	set		设置
	split		分割
	spread		传播
	spit/spat		吐痰
	shut		关闭

① 以重读闭音节结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的动词，如果结尾字母是 w、y、x，直接加 ing，比如 employ → employ、imply → implying、relax → relaxing。



2 AAB型

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
	beat	beaten	击打

3 ABA型

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
become	became	become	变为
come	came	come	来
run	ran	run	跑
overcome	overcame	overcome	克服

4 ABB型

▲ V-d/t/ed

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
burn	burned/burnt		燃烧
babysit	babysat		照看婴儿
deal	dealt		处理
dream	dreamed/dreamt		做梦
hear	heard		听见
hang	hanged/hung		悬挂
learn	learned/learnt		学习
light	lit/lighted		照亮
may	may	/	可以
mean		meant	意味
prove	proved	proved/proven	证明
shine	shone/shined		发光
show	showed	showed/shone	展示
smell	smelled/smelt		闻
speed	speeded/sped		加速
spell	spelled/spelt		拼写
wake	waked/woke	waked/woken	醒
will		willed	决心做
will	would	/	愿意

▲ V-t

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
build	built		建设
bend	bent		弯曲



lend	lent	借出
rebuild	rebuilt	重建
send	sent	送
spend	spent	花费

▲ V-ought

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
bring	brought		带来
buy	bought		买
fight	fought		战斗
think	thought		思考
seek	sought		寻找

▲ V-aught

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
catch	caught		抓
teach	taught		教

▲ 改变其中一个元音字母

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
dig	dug		挖掘
feed	fed		喂养
flee	fled		逃跑
find	found		找到
get	got	got/gotten	获得
hold	held		握住
lead	led		领导
meet	met		会见
sit	sat		坐
shoot	shot		射击
stick	stuck		粘住
strike	struck	struck/striken	撞击
swing	swung		挥舞
win	won		赢

▲ V-lt/pt/ft

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
feel	felt		感到



keep	kept	保持
leave	left	离开
sleep	slept	睡觉
sweep	swept	扫
weep	wept	哭泣

▲ 其他

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
lay	laid		放置
pay	paid		付款
say	said		说
stand	stood		站立
understand	understood		理解
misunderstand	misunderstood		误解
lose	lost		失去
have	had		有
make	made		制造
sell	sold		卖
tell	told		告诉
retell	retold		复述
wind	wound		缠绕

5 ABC型

▲ 原形 → 过去式 → 原形-(e)n

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
arise	arose	arisen	出现
blow	blew	blown	吹
drive	drove	driven	驾驶
draw	drew	drawn	画
eat	ate	eaten	吃
fall	fell	fallen	落下
forbid	forbade	forbidden	禁止
foresee	foresaw	foreseen	预见
forgive	forgave	forgiven	原谅
give	gave	given	给
grow	grew	grown	生长
know	knew	known	知道
mistake	mistook	mistaken	弄错



overeat	overate	overeaten	吃过量
take	took	taken	拿
throw	threw	thrown	抛掷
rise	rose	risen	上升
ride	rode	ridden	骑乘
see	saw	seen	看见
sew	sewed	sewed/sewn	缝制
show	showed	showed/shown	展示
shake	shook	shaken	抖动
spring	sprang	sprung	弹起
write	wrote	written	写
rewrite	rewrote	rewritten	重写

▲ 原形 → 过去式 → 过去式-(e)n

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
awake	awoke	awoken	唤醒
break	broke	broken	打破
choose	chose	chosen	选择
get	got	got/gotten	获得
hide	hid	hidden	隐藏
forget	forgot	forgotten	忘记
freeze	froze	frozen	冷冻
speak	spoke	spoken	说话
steal	stole	stolen	偷窃

▲ i → a → u

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
begin	began	begun	开始
drink	drank	drunk	喝
sing	sang	sung	唱
sink	sank	sunk	下沉
swim	swam	swum	游泳
ring	rang	rung	响起

▲ 其他

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	基本词义
be (am/is/are)	was/were	been	是
can	could	/	能



bear	bore	borne	承受
dive	dived/dove	dived	潜水
do	did	done	做
undo	undid	undone	撤销
fly	flew	flown	飞
go	went	gone	去
lie	lay	lain	躺
shall	should	/	将要
wear	wore	worn	穿
bite	bit	bitten	咬
tear	tore	torn	撕



附录三 介词全表

封闭词类包括助动词、冠词、介词、连词、感叹词等虚词。根据本书封闭词类完全列举的原则，助动词（[5.1.1 助动词](#)）、冠词（[4.1.1-2 冠词](#)）、连词（[第二章 复杂句、第三章 复合句](#)）等见正文内容，感叹词比较直观，无须列举。

下文列举英语所有介词（共 149 个，编号 1-145，其中 9、10、120、125 号各有两个介词）

编号	介词	编号	介词	编号	介词
1	aboard	29	barring	57	following
2	about	30	before	58	for
3	above	31	behind	59	from
4	across	32	below	60	forward of
5	after	33	beneath	61	further to
6	against	34	beside	62	given
7	along	35	besides	63	gone
8	alongside	36	between	64	in
9	amid amidst	37	beyond	65	including
10	among amongst	38	but	66	inside
11	anti	39	by	67	into
12	around	40	because of	68	in addition to
13	as	41	but for	69	in between
14	astride	42	by means of	70	in case of
15	at	43	circa	71	in face of
16	atop	44	concerning	72	in favour of
17	according to	45	considering	73	in front of
18	ahead of	46	counting	74	in lieu of
19	à la	47	cum	75	in place of
20	along with	48	despite	76	in spite of
21	apart from	49	down	77	instead of
22	as for	50	during	78	in view of
23	aside from	51	depending on	79	less
24	as per	52	due to	80	like
25	as to	53	except	81	minus
26	as well as	54	excepting	82	near
27	away from	55	excluding	83	notwithstanding
28	bar	56	except for	84	near to



编号	介词	编号	介词	编号	介词
85	next to	106	plus	127	together with
86	of	107	pro	128	under
87	off	108	preparatory to	129	underneath
88	on	109	prior to	130	unlike
89	onto	110	re	131	until
90	opposite	111	regarding	132	up
91	outside	112	respecting	133	upon
92	over	113	round	134	up against
93	on account of	114	regardless of	135	up to
94	on behalf of	115	save	136	up until
95	on board	116	saving	137	versus
96	on to	117	since	138	via
97	on top of	118	save for	139	vis-à-vis
98	opposite to	119	than	140	with
99	other than	120	through thru	141	within
100	out of	121	throughout	142	without
101	outside of	122	till	143	worth
102	owing to	123	to	144	with reference to
103	past	124	touching	145	with regard to
104	pending	125	towards toward		
105	per	126	thanks to		



附录四 英语语法练习题

第一章练习题

1. I like getting up very early in summer. The morning air is so good _____. (2008 年高考)
A. to be breathed B. to breathe C. breathing D. being breathed

2. The children all turned ____ the famous actress as she entered the classroom. (2009 年高考)
A. looked at B. to look at C. to looking at D. look at

3. Now that we've discussed our problem, are people happy with the decisions ____?
(2009 年高考)
A. taking B. take C. taken D. to take

4. Mrs. White showed her students some old maps ____ from the library. (2010 年高考)
A. to borrow B. to be borrowed C. borrowed D. borrowing

5. With Father's Day around the corner, I have taken some money out of the bank ____ presents for my dad. (2010 年高考)
A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. to have bought

6. The next thing he saw was smoke ____ from behind the house. (2011 年高考)
A. rose B. rising C. to rise D. risen

7. The party will be held in the garden, weather _____. (2012 年高考)
A. permitting B. to permit C. permitted D. permit

8. Film has a much shorter history, especially when ____ such art forms as music and painting. (2012 年高考)
A. having compared to B. comparing to C. compare to D. compared to

9. They might just have a place ____ on the writing course — why don't you give it a try?
(2013 年高考)
A. leave B. left C. leaving D. to leave

10. The sunlight is white and blinding, ____ hard-edged shadows on the ground. (2013 年高考)



- A. throwing B. being thrown C. to throw D. to be thrown
11. Children, when ___ by their parents, are allowed to enter the stadium. (2014 年高考湖南卷)
 A. to be accompanied B. to accompany
 C. accompanying D. accompanied
12. The lecture ___, a lively question-and-answer session followed. (2014 年高考江苏卷)
 A. being given B. having given
 C. to be given D. having been given
13. The driver wanted to park his car near the roadside but was asked by the police ___.
 (2013 年高考)
 A. not to do B. not to C. not do D. do not
14. ___ should not become a serious disadvantage in life and work. (2010 年专四)
 A. To be not tall B. Not being tall C. Being not tall D. Not to be tall.
15. Please pardon ___ you. (2014 年专四)
 A. my disturbing B. disturbing C. me to disturb D. that I disturb
16. Which of the following italicized parts indicates a subject-verb relation? (2015 年专四)
 A. The man has a large family *to support*.
 B. She had no wish *to quarrel with her brother*.
 C. He was the last guest *to leave*.
 D. Mary needs a friend *to talk to*.
17. There ___ nothing more for discussion, the meeting came to an end half an hour earlier.
 (2015 年专四)
 A. to be B. to have been C. being D. be
18. This is one of the issues that deserve ___. (2016 年专四)
 A. mentioning B. being mentioned
 C. to mention D. for mention
19. Some Martian rock structures look strikingly like structures on Earth that are known ___ by microbes. (2017 年专四)
 A. having been created B. being created



- C. to have been created D. to be created
20. She hired a lawyer to investigate, only to learn that Gabriel had removed her name from the deed. The infinitive verb phrase "only to learn" is used _____. (2018 年专四)
- A. to express an intended purpose
B. to indicate a high degree of possibility
C. to reveal an undesirable consequence
D. to dramatize a stated fact
21. Members of the Parliament were poised ____ ahead with a bill to approve construction of the oil pipeline. (2019 年专四)
- A. to move B. moving C. to moving D. at moving

参考答案

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	B	C	C	B	B	A	D	B	A
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
D	D	B	B	A	C	C	A	C	C
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
A									



第二章练习题

1. The lawyer seldom wears anything other than a suit ____ the season. (2008年高考)
A. whatever B. wherever C. whenever D. however

2. – Have you got any idea for the summer vacation?
– I don't mind where we go ____ there's sun, sea and beach. (2008年高考)
A. as if B. as long as C. now that D. in order that

3. The weather was ____ cold that I didn't like to leave my room. (2008年高考)
A. really B. such C. too D. so

4. Could I speak to ____ is in charge of International Sales please? (2009年高考)
A. who B. what C. whoever D. whatever

5. She brought with her three friends, none of ____ I had ever met before. (2009年高考)
A. them B. these C. who D. whom

6. As a child, Jack studied in a village school, ____ is named after his grandfather. (2010年高考)
A. which B. where C. what D. that

7. Mary made coffee ____ her guests were finishing their meal. (2010年高考)
A. so that B. although C. while D. as if

8. I have seldom seen my mother ____ pleased with my progress as she is now. (2010年高考)
A. so B. very C. too D. rather

9. The little boy won't go to sleep ____ his mother tells him a story. (2010年高考)
A. or B. unless C. but D. whether

10. We haven't discussed yet ____ we are going to place our new furniture. (2010年高考)
A. that B. which C. what D. where

11. Try ____ she might, Sue couldn't get the door open. (2011年高考)
A. if B. when C. since D. as

12. The prize will go to the writer ____ story shows the most imagination. (2011年高考)



- A. that B. which C. whose D. what
13. It is by no means clear ____ the president can do to end the strike. (2012 年高考)
 A. how B. which C. that D. what
14. I don't believe we've met before, ____ I must say you do look familiar. (2012 年高考)
 A. therefore B. although C. since D. unless
15. If we ____ now to protect the environment, we'll live to regret it. (2013 年高考)
 A. hadn't acted B. haven't acted C. don't act D. won't act
16. Police have found ____ appears to be the lost ancient statue. (2013 年高考)
 A. which B. where C. how D. what
17. There's no way of knowing why one man makes an important discovery ____ another man, also intelligent, fails. (2013 年高考)
 A. since B. if C. as D. while
18. The result is not very important to us, but if we do win, then so much _____. (2012 年高考)
 A. the best B. best C. better D. the better
19. Tony can hardly boil an egg, still ____ cook dinner. (2013 年高考)
 A. less B. little C. much D. more
20. After ____ seemed an endless wait, it was his turn to enter the personnel manager's office. (2010 年专四)
 A. that B. it C. what D. there
21. Fool ____ Jerry is, he could not have done such a thing. (2010 年专四)
 A. who B. as C. like D. that
22. My uncle is quite worn out from years of hard work. He is no longer the man ____ he was fifteen years ago. (2011 年专四)
 A. which B. whom C. who D. that
23. Which of the following italicized parts is a subject clause (主语从句) ? (2011 年专四)
 A. We are quite certain *that we will get there in time.*



- B. He has to face the fact *that there will be no pay rise this year.*
 C. She said *that she had seen the man earlier that morning.*
 D. It is sheer luck *that the miners are still alive after ten days.*
24. There is no doubt __ the couple did the right thing in coming back home earlier than planned. (2011 年专四)
 A. whether B. that C. why D. when
25. Which of the following contains an adverbial clause of cause? (2012 年专四)
 A. I got a job as soon as I left university.
 B. As there was no answer, I wrote again.
 C. You must do the exercises as I show you.
 D. Wealthy as he is, Mark is not a happy man.
26. There is no doubt ____ the committee has made the right decision on the housing project. (2015 年专四)
 A. why B. that C. whether D. when
27. She is a better speaker than ____ in the class. (2016 年专四)
 A. all the girls B. the other boys C. other any girl D. any boy
28. ____ combination of techniques authors use, all stories — from the briefest anecdotes to the longest novels — have a plot. (2017 年专四)
 A. Regarding B. Whatever C. In so far as D. No matter
29. She followed the receptionist down a luxurious corridor to a closed door, ____ the woman gave a quick knock before opening it. (2017 年专四)
 A. wherein B. on which C. but when D. then
30. Protocol was ____ enabled him to make difficult decisions without ever looking back. (2019 年专四)
 A. who B. what C. which D. that
31. "Harry was compelled to resign and to come down to London, where he set up as an army coach." The relative clause in the sentence serves to _____. (2019 年专四)
 A. supply additional information about London
 B. describe the antecedent "London"
 C. put restrictions on the identity of Harry



D. narrate a sequential action taken by Harry

参考答案



第三章练习题

1. – Someone wants you on the phone.
– ____ nobody knows I am here. (2011 年高考)
A. Although B. And C. But D. So

2. You have to move out of the way, ____ the truck cannot get past you. (2012 年高考)
A. so B. or C. and D. but

3. Which of the italicized parts indicates CONTRAST? (2013 年专四)
A. She opened the door *and* quietly went in.
B. Think it over again *and* you'll get an answer.
C. Victoria likes music *and* Sam is fond of sports.
D. He is somewhat arrogant, *and* I don't like this.

4. She didn't go to school yesterday, ____ he had hurt her legs while climbing the mountain.
A. but B. however C. or D. for

5. They bought her a present, ____ she liked it very much.
A. and B. but C. or D. so

6. She can't swim, ____ can he.
A. nor B. or C. so D. but

7. The nurse is very tired ____ she is still working very hard.
A. but B. and C. or D. if

8. Maybe he has gone home, ____ he is in his office.
A. or B. but C. nor D. yet

9. Hurry up, ____ we'll be late for the concert.
A. and B. but C. so D. or

10. Tom works very hard, ____ his family is still very poor.
A. yet B. for C. so D. and

11. Jim was very hungry ____ he ate all the cakes.
A. and B. but C. so D. or



12. ___ did she go to see her father, ___ did she want her father to come.
- A. Either; or B. Not; only C. No sooner; than D. Neither; nor
13. You can study ___ Chinese ___ English.
- A. not only; also B. either; or C. both; or D. only; and
14. We want ___ high speed ___ good marks.
- A. both; and B. Either; or C. neither; nor D. not; also but
15. In spring it is ___ hot ___ cold here.
- A. both; and B. either; or C. neither; nor D. not only, but
16. You can ___ stay at home ___ go out to play.
- A. either; or B. both; and C. so; that D. as; as
17. ___ he ___ I know about this accident because it was kept as a secret.
- A. Both; nor B. Neither; nor C. Both; and D. Neither; or
18. ___ Tuesday ___ Wednesday are OK. I'll be free these days.
- A. Both; and B. Either; or C. Both; and D. So; tha
19. ___ John ___ Ann were ill yesterday.
- A. Neither; nor B. Either; or C. Both; and D. So; that
20. ___ you ___ I are students.
- A. Not only; but also B. Either; or C. Both; and D. Neithe; nor

参考答案

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
C	B	C	D	A	A	A	A	D	A
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	D	B	A	C	A	B	C	C	C



第四章练习题

1. — Which of the two computer games did you prefer?
— Actually I didn't like _____. (2008 年高考)
A. both of them B. either of them C. none of them D. neither of them

2. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly different from ____ spoken in England. (2008 年高考)
A. which B. what C. that D. the one

3. Let's go to ____ cinema — that'll take your mind off the problem for ____ while. (2009 年高考)
A. the; the B. the; a C. a; the D. a; a

4. One of the most important questions they had to consider was ____ of public health. (2009 年高考)
A. what B. this C. that D. which

5. Everybody was touched ____ words after they heard her moving story. (2009 年高考)
A. of B. without C. beyond D. in

6. I'll spend half of my holiday practicing English and ____ half learning drawing. (2010 年高考)
A. another B. the other C. other's D. other

7. The form cannot be signed by anyone ____ yourself. (2011 年高考)
A. rather than B. other than C. more than D. better than

8. It is generally accepted that ____ boy must learn to stand up and fight like ____ man. (2011 年高考)
A. a; a B. a; the C. the; the D. a; 不填

9. Sarah looked at ____ finished painting with ____ satisfaction. (2012 年高考)
A. 不填; a B. a; the C. the; 不填 D. the; a

10. Larry asks Bill and Peter to go on a picnic with him, but ____ of them wants to, because they have work to do. (2012 年高考)
A. either B. any C. neither D. none



11. India attained ___ independence in 1947, after ___ long struggle. (2013 年高考)
A. 不填; a B. the; a C. an; 不填 D. an; the
12. It was a real race ___ time to get the project done. Luckily, we made it. (2013 年高考)
A. over B. by C. for D. against
13. Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT? (2010 年专四)
A. They each have two tickets.
B. They cost twenty yuan each.
C. Each they have bought the same book.
D. They were given two magazines each.
14. When one has good health, ___ should feel fortunate. (2010 年专四)
A. you B. they C. he D. we
15. Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT? (2010 年专四)
A. All his lectures are very interesting. B. Half their savings were gone.
C. Many his friends came to the party. D. Both his sisters are nurses.
16. Which of the following italicized phrases indicates purpose? (2011 年专四)
A. She said it *for fun*, but others took her seriously.
B. *For all its effort*, the team didn't win the match.
C. Linda has worked for the firm *for twenty years*.
D. He set out *for Beijing* yesterday.
17. The additional work will take ___ weeks. (2011 年专四)
A. the other B. another two C. other two D. the more
18. Which of the following determiners (限定词) can be placed before both singular count nouns and plural count nouns? (2012 年专四)
A. many a B. few C. the next D. such
19. Tony is going camping with ___ boys.
A. little two other B. two little other C. two other little D. little other two



20. Facing the board of directors, he didn't deny ____ breaking the agreement. (2013 年专四)
A. him B. his C. it D. its
21. The following determiners (限定词) can be used with both plural and uncountable nouns EXCEPT _____. (2013 年专四)
A. many B. enough C. more D. such
22. Which of the following CANNOT be used as a nominal substitute (名词替代词)? (2013 年专四)
A. Much B. Neither C. One D. Quarter
23. Which of the following sentences is grammatically INCORRECT? (2013 年专四)
A. Politics are the art or science of government.
B. Ten miles seems like a long walk to me.
C. Mumps is a kind of infectious disease.
D. All the furniture has arrived undamaged.
24. Which of the following phrases indicates a subject-predicate relationship? (2013 年专四)
A. The occupation of the island. B. The law of Newton.
C. The arrival of the tourists. D. The plays of Oscar Wilde.
25. The boys in the family are old enough for _____. (2014 年专四)
A. schools B. school C. the school D. the schools
26. Which of the following italicized parts indicates a predicate-object relationship? (2014 年专四)
A. He was reading *Mary's letter* in the room.
B. You can buy *men's shoes* in this shop.
C. *Mrs. Blake's passport* was lost.
D. *The enemy's defeat* brought the war to an end.
27. Which of the following statements is INCORRECT? (2015 年专四)
A. Five miles seem like a long walk to me.
B. Ten dollars was stolen from the cash register.
C. Either my sister or my brother is coming.
D. Only one out of six were present at the meeting.



28. Which of the following is INCORRECT? (2015 年专四)
A. A bit of flowers B. Few words
C. This work D. Another two girls
29. When one has good health, ____ should feel fortunate (2015 年专四)
A. you B. she C. he D. we
30. There has been an increasing number of ____ in primary schools in the past few years.
(2016 年专四)
A. man teacher B. men teacher C. man teachers D. men teachers
31. The audience ____ excited on seeing ____ favorite star glide onto the stage. (2016 年专四)
A. were...its B. were...their C. was...their D. was...one's
32. Ms Ennab is one of the first Palestinian ____ with seven years' racing experience. (2017 年专四)
A. woman drivers B. women driver C. women drivers D. woman driver
33. She was once a young country wife with chickens in the backyard and a view of ____ mountains behind the apple orchard. (2018 年专四)
A. blue hazy Virginia B. hazy blue Virginia
C. Virginia hazy blue D. Virginia blue hazy
34. I long to alleviate ____, but I cannot. (2018 年专四)
A. the evil B. evil C. evils D. an evil
35. At ____, photography is a chemical process, during which a light-sensitive material is altered when exposed to light. (2018 年专四)
A. its most basic B. its basic C. the most basic D. the basic
36. The woman had persuaded him to do ____ he was hired never to do — reveal the combination for the lock on the entrance. (2019 年专四)
A. one thing B. such one thing C. any one thing D. the one thing

**参考答案**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	C	B	C	C	B	B	A	C	C
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	D	C	C	C	A	B	C	C	B
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
A	D	A	C	B	D	A	A	C	D
31	32	33	34	35	36				
B	C	B	A	A	D				



第五章练习题

1. – Have you known Dr. Jackson for a long time?
– Yes, since she ___ the Chinese Society. (2008 年高考)
A. has joined B. joins C. had joined D. joined

2. The wet weather will continue tomorrow when a cold front ___ to arrive. (2008 年高考)
A. is expected B. is expecting
C. expects D. will be expected

3. What do you mean, there are only ten tickets? There ___ be twelve. (2009 年高考)
A. must B. can C. will D. should

4. His sister left home in 2010, and ___ since. (2009 年高考)
A. had not been heard of B. has not been heard of
C. had not heard of D. has not heard of

5. Edward, you play so well. But I ___ you played the piano. (2009 年高考)
A. didn't know B. hadn't known
C. don't know D. haven't known

6. – Have you finished reading *Jane Eyre*?
– No, I ___ my homework all day yesterday. (2010 年高考)
A. was doing B. would do C. had done D. do

7. When you are home, give a call to let me know you ___ safely. (2010 年高考)
A. are arriving B. have arrived C. had arrived D. will arrive

8. Just be patient. You ___ expect the world to change so soon. (2010 年高考)
A. can't B. needn't C. may not D. will not

9. The discovery of gold in Australia led thousands to believe that a fortune ___. (2010 年高考)
A. is made B. would make C. was to be made D. had made

10. Planning so far ahead ___ no sense — so many things will have changed by next year. (2011 年高考)



- A. made B. is making C. makes D. has made
11. I wasn't sure if he was really interested or if he ___ polite. (2011 年高考)
 A. was just being B. will just be C. had just been D. would just be
12. When Alice came to, she did not know how long she ___ there. (2011 年高考)
 A. had been lying B. has been lying C. was lying D. has lain
13. They ___ have arrived at lunchtime but their flight was delayed. (2011 年高考)
 A. will B. can C. must D. should
14. "Life is like walking in the snow", Granny used to say, "because every step ___. (2012 年高考)
 A. has shown B. is showing C. shows D. showed
15. I ___ use a clock to wake me up because at six o'clock each morning the train comes by my house. (2012 年高考)
 A. couldn't B. mustn't C. shouldn't D. needn't
16. I had been working on math for the whole afternoon and the numbers ___ before my eyes. (2012 年高考)
 A. swim B. swum C. swam D. had swum
17. When I first met Bryan I didn't like him, but I ___ my mind. (2013 年高考)
 A. have changed B. change C. had changed D. would change
18. The door ___ open, no matter how hard she pushed. (2013 年高考)
 A. shouldn't B. couldn't C. wouldn't D. mightn't
19. Nancy's gone to work but her car's still there. She ___ by bus. (2010 年专四)
 A. must have gone B. should have gone
 C. ought to have gone D. could have gone
20. She seldom goes to the theatre, ___? (2010 年专四)
 A. doesn't she B. does she C. would she D. wouldn't she
21. It is necessary that he ___ the assignment without delay. (2010 年专四)
 A. hand in B. hands in C. must hand in D. has to hand in



22. Which of the following sentences is a COMMAND? (2011 年专四)
A. Beg your pardon. B. Have a good time.
C. Never do that again! D. What noise you are making!
23. When you have finished with the book, don't forget to return it to Tim, ____? (2011 年专四)
A. do you B. will you C. don't you D. won't you
24. It's getting late. I'd rather you ____ now. (2011 年专四)
A. left B. leave C. are leaving D. will leave
25. My boss ordered that the legal documents ____ to him before lunch. (2012 年专四)
A. be sent B. were sent C. were to be sent D. must be sent
26. Which of the following sentences contains subjunctive mood? (2013 年专四)
A. Lucy insisted that her son get home before 5 o'clock.
B. She used to drive to work, but now she takes the city metro.
C. Walk straight ahead, and don't turn till the second traffic lights.
D. Paul will cancel his flight if he cannot get his visa by Friday.
27. All the following sentences definitely indicate future time EXCEPT _____. (2013 年专四)
A. Mother is to have tea with Aunt Betty at four.
B. The school pupils will be home by now.
C. The President is coming to the UN next week.
D. He is going to email me the necessary information.
28. It is essential that he ____ all the facts first. (2014 年专四)
A. is examining B. will examine C. examines D. examine
29. Which of the following sentences expresses a future action? (2014 年专四)
A. Lucy is continually finding fault with her sister.
B. We are meeting the visitors after the performance.
C. The coach is now crossing the Garden Bridge.
D. I'm hoping that you'll give us some advice.
30. Which of the following sentences indicates POSSIBILITY? (2014 年专四)
A. The moon cannot always be at the full.



- B. You cannot smoke inside the building.
C. He cannot come today.
D. She cannot play the piano.
31. Which of the following tag questions is INCORRECT? (2014 年专四)
A. Carry this parcel for me, will you?
B. Nobody wants to go there, does he?
C. Few people know him, don't they?
D. Everything is ready, isn't it?
32. When you have finished with that book, don't forget to put it back on the shelf, ____? (2015 年专四)
A. will you B. do you C. don't you D. won't you
33. If you explained the situation to your lawyer, he ____ able to advise you much better than I can. (2015 年专四)
A. will be B. would be C. was D. were
34. How can I concentrate if you ____ continually ____ me with silly questions? (2016 年专四)
A. have...interrupted B. had...interrupted
C. are...interrupting D. were...interrupting
35. Among the four sentences below, Sentence ____ expresses the highest degree of possibility. (2016 年专四)
A. It may take a long time to find a solution to the problem.
B. It might take a long time to find a solution to the problem.
C. It could take a long time to find a solution to the problem.
D. It should take a long time to find a solution to the problem.
36. Nobody heard him sing, ____? (2016 年专四)
A. did they B. did he C. didn't they D. did one
37. ____ your advice, I would have made the wrong decision. (2016 年专四)
A. Hadn't it been for B. Had it not been for
C. Had it been for D. Had not it been for



38. The sentence "I wish I had been more careful in spending money" expresses the speaker's ___. (2016 年专四)
- A. hope B. joy C. regret D. relief
39. "I wondered if I could have a word with you." The past tense in the sentence refers to a ___. (2017 年专四)
- A. past event for exact time reference
B. present event for tentativeness
C. present event for uncertainty
D. past event for politeness
40. "If I were you, I wouldn't wait to propose to her." The subjunctive mood in the sentence is used to ___. (2017 年专四)
- A. alleviate hostility B. express unfavorable feelings
C. indicate uncertainty D. make a suggestion
41. "It's a shame that the city official should have gone back on his word." The modal auxiliary SHOULD express ___. (2017 年专四)
- A. obligation B. disappointment
C. future in the past D. tentativeness
42. Timothy Ray Brown, the first man cured of HIV, initially opted against the stem cell transplant that ___ history. (2017 年专四)
- A. could have later made B. should have made later
C. might make later D. would later make
43. At that moment, with the crowd watching me, I was not afraid in the ordinary sense, as I ___ if I ___ alone. (2017 年专四)
- A. would have been ...had been B. should be ... had been
C. could be ... were D. might have been... were
44. The Bent Pyramid outside Cairo ___ ancient Egypt's first attempt to build a smooth-sided pyramid. (2018 年专四)
- A. has been believed to have been B. was believed to be
C. is believed to have been D. is believed to be
45. U.S. News ___ rankings of colleges since 1983. They are a very popular resource for students looking to apply to a university campus. (2018 年专四)



- A. maintains B. is maintaining
 C. maintained D. has been maintaining
46. My mother was determined to help those in need and she *would have been* immensely proud of what has been achieved these last 20 years. The italicized part in the sentence expresses _____. (2018 年专四)
 A. a hypothesis B. a suggestion C. a contradiction D. a surprise
47. ____ the attempted rescue mission, the hostages might still be alive. (2019 年专四)
 A. If it not had been for B. If had it not been for
 C. Had it not been for D. Had not it been for
48. Writers often coupled narration with other techniques to develop ideas and support opinions that otherwise ____ abstract, unclear, or unconvincing. (2019 年专四)
 A. may remain B. could remain
 C. must have remained D. might have remained
49. The bad news was that he could be a very dangerous person ____ he choose to be. (2019 年专四)
 A. should B. could C. might D. must
50. What is the function of the present progressive in "They are always calling me by the wrong name"? (2019 年专四)
 A. To express unfavorable feelings.
 B. To alleviate unnecessary hostility.
 C. To indicate uncertainty.
 D. To dramatize a fact.
51. ____ the English examination I would have gone to the concert last Sunday.
 A. In spite of B. But for C. Because of D. As for

参考答案

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
D	A	D	B	A	A	B	A	C	C
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	A	D	C	D	C	A	C	A	B
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
A	C	B	A	A	A	B	D	B	A
31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40



C	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	B	D
41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
B	D	A	C	D	A	C	D	A	A
51									
B									



第六章练习题

1. – What fruit is in season now?
– Pears and apples, _____. (2008 年高考)
A. I know B. I think C. I see D. I feel

2. You are driving too fast. Can you drive ____? (2008 年高考)
A. more slowly a bit B. slowly a bit more
C. a bit more slowly D. slowly more bit

3. How much ____ she looked without her glasses! (2009 年高考)
A. well B. good C. best D. better

4. In the sentence "It's no use *waiting for her*," the italicized phrase is _____. (2010 年专四)
A. the object B. an adverbial C. a complement D. the subject

5. Which of the following sentences has an object complement? (2010 年专四)
A. The directors appointed John manager. B. I gave Mary a Christmas present.
C. You have done Peter a favour. D. She is teaching children English.

6. Which of the following italicized parts is used as an object? (2011 年专四)
A. *What* do you think has happened to her?
B. *Who* do you think the visiting professor is?
C. *How much* do you think he earns every month?
D. *How quickly* would you say he would come?

7. In the sentence "The manager interviewed Jim *himself* in the morning," the italicized word is used to modify _____. (2011 年专四)
A. the object B. the verb
C. the subject D. the prepositional phrase

8. Which of the following reflexive pronouns (反身代词) is used as an appositive (同位语)? (2012 年专四)
A. He promised himself rapid progress.
B. The manager herself will interview Mary.
C. I have nothing to say for myself.
D. They quarreled themselves red in the face.

9. Which of the italicized parts functions as a subject? (2012 年专四)



- A. We never doubt *that her brother is honest*.
 B. The problem is not *who will go but who will stay*.
 C. It is clear *that the crime was done deliberately*.
 D. You must give it back to *whoever it belongs to*.
10. Which of the italicized parts functions as an object? (2012 年专四)
 A. He doesn't like the idea of *my speaking at the meeting*.
 B. It is no use *your pretending not to know the matter*.
 C. *Her falling into the river* was the climax of the whole trip.
 D. My parents strongly object to *my going out alone at night*.
11. All the following sentences have an appositive EXCEPT _____. (2012 年专四)
 A. Only one problem still remains — the food.
 B. She bought herself a pair of new shoes.
 C. My friends all understand and support me.
 D. She liked her current job, teaching English.
12. Xinchun returned from abroad *a different man*. The italicized part functions as a(n) ____ in the sentence. (2013 年专四)
 A. appositive(同位语) B. object C. adverbial D. complement
13. Which of the following italicized parts is used as an object complement? (2014 年专四)
 A. The front door remained *locked*.
 B. The boy looked *disappointed*.
 C. Nancy appeared *worried*.
 D. He seemed to have no money *left*.
14. Which of the following reflexive pronouns (反身代词) is used as an object? (2014 年专四)
 A. I spoke to the president himself.
 B. Frank is not quite himself today.
 C. Linda herself will play the violin.
 D. You must pull yourself together.
15. Though he had often made his little sister ___, today he was made ___ by his little sister. 
 A. cry; to cry B. crying; crying C. cry; cry D. to cry; cry



16. I heard that you were elected ___ this time.
- A. the monitor B. monitor C. a monitor D. my monitor
17. John rushed out in a hurry, ___ the door ___.
- A. leaving; unlocking B. leaving; unlocked
C. left; unlocked D. to leave; unlocking
18. John is often referred to ___ at the factory.
- A. as being the best engineer B. be the best engineer
C. by the president to be the best engineer D. as the best engineer
19. The missing boy was last seen ___ near the river.
- A. playing B. to be playing C. play D. to play
20. The door was painted ___.
- A. in white B. as white C. white D. whitely
21. Let's learn to use the problem we are facing ___ a stepping-stone to future success.
(2008 年高考)
- A. to B. for C. as D. by
22. Which of the following italicized phrases indicates CAUSE? (2010 年专四)
- A. Why don't you do it *for the sake of your friends*.
B. I wish I could write *as well as you*.
C. *For all his efforts*, he didn't get an A.
D. Her eyes were red *from excessive reading*.
23. Which of the following italicized phrases indicates a subject-predicate relation (主谓关系) ? (2011 年专四)
- A. *Mr. Smith's passport* has been issued.
B. *The visitor's arrival* was reported in the news.
C. *John's travel details* have not been finalized.
D. The new bookstore sells *children's stories*.
24. Which of the following prepositional phrases can function as an adverbial? (2012 年专四)
- A. *Despite the rain*, everyone enjoyed the trip.
B. The man *with a beard* is talking to the manager.



C. Every precaution was taken *against the failure of the plan*.

D. Are you sure *of Simon's disappearance*?

参考答案

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	C	D	D	A	C	C	B	C	D
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
B	C/D*	D	B	A	B	B	D	A	C
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
C	D	B	A、C*						

注：

12. 根据传统语法，选 D；根据本书语法体系，选 C ([6.1.1 SVi\[A\]](#))。

24. A、C 都对，原参考答案将 C 中斜体部分视为主语补语，但这是分析错误。试将 C 选项改为主动语态：Somebody took {every precaution}_{宾语} [*against the failure of the plan*]. 此时 took 是「采取(措施)」之意，斜体部分仍然是目的状语，而非宾语补语，所以 C 选项中斜体部分也不是主语补语 ([6.1.5-2 S be done Cs](#))。试比较：She took {what he said}_{宾语} <*as a compliment*>_{宾语补语}. (Oxford) 此时，take 是「视为」之意，as a compliment 是宾语部分。如果改为被动语态：{What he said}_{主语} was taken <*as a compliment*>_{主语补语}. 此时，as a compliment 是主语部分。



第七章练习题

1. The computer was used in teaching. As a result, not only ___, but students became more interested in the lessons. (2009 年高考)

A. saved was teachers' energy	B. was teachers' energy saved
C. teachers' energy was saved	D. was saved teachers' energy

2. Only when he reached the tea-house ___ it was the same place he'd been in last year. (2011 年高考)

A. he realized	B. he did realize	C. realized he	D. did he realize
----------------	-------------------	----------------	-------------------

3. – Would you like to join me for a quick lunch before class?
 – ___, but I promised Nancy to go out with her. (2008 年高考)

A. I'd like to	B. I like it.	C. I don't	D. I will
----------------	---------------	------------	-----------

4. – Everybody is going to climb the mountain. Can I go too, mum?
 – ___. Wait till you are old enough, dear. (2010 年高考)

A. Will you?	B. Why not?	C. I hope so.	D. I'm afraid not
--------------	-------------	---------------	-------------------

5. – Was he sorry for what he'd done?
 – ___. (2010 年高考)

A. No wonder	B. Well done	C. Not really	D. Go ahead
--------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

6. – We could invite John and Barbara to the Friday night party.
 – Yes, ___. I'll give them a call right now. (2011 年高考)

A. why not	B. what for	C. why	D. what
------------	-------------	--------	---------

7. – Artistic people can be very difficult sometimes.
 – Well, you married one. ___. (2011 年高考)

A. You name it	B. I've got it
C. I can't agree more	D. You should know

8. Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT? (2012 年专四)

A. How strange feelings they are!	B. How dare you speak to me like that!
C. What noise they are making!	D. What a mess we are in!



9. Indeed, it is arguable that body shattering is the very point of football, as killing and maiming ___. (2018 年专四)
- A. war B. are war C. of war D. are of war
10. Moving from beginning to end by order of time, narration relies on a more natural pattern of organization than ___. (2019 年专四)
- A. will other types of writing B. do other types of writing
C. on other types of writing D. other types of writing
11. It was not until midnight ____ the noise of the street stopped.
- A. that B. this C. since D. at which
12. It was not ____ you had explained how ____ I managed to do it.
- A. for; that B. until; that C. for; when D. until; when
13. It was the boy ____ had been in prison ____ stole the money.
- A. who; where B. that; how C. who; that D. that; which
14. ____ his father works!
- A. How careful B. How carefully
C. What careful D. What carefully
15. ____ supper we're having today!
- A. What a delicious B. How delicious
C. What delicious D. How deliciously
16. ____ time they had yesterday!
- A. How wonderful B. What wonderful
C. What a wonderful D. How wonderfully

参考答案

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	D	A	D	C	A	D	A	D	D
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	B	C	B	A	C				



第八章练习题

1. Our neighbor has ___ ours. (2003 年高考北京卷)
 - A. as a big house as
 - B. as big a house as
 - C. the same big house as
 - D. a house the same big as

2. What a table! I've never seen such a thing before. It is ___ it is long.
 - A. half not as wide as
 - B. wide not as half as
 - C. not half as wide as
 - D. as wide as not half

3. I'd like to arrive 20 minutes early ___ I can have time for a cup of tea.
 - A. as soon as
 - B. as a result
 - C. in case
 - D. so that

4. The more I think about him, the more reasons I find for loving him ___ I did.
 - A. as much as
 - B. as long as
 - C. as soon as
 - D. as far as

5. John is the tallest boy in the class, ___ according to himself. (2005 年高考安徽卷)
 - A. five foot eight as tall as
 - B. as tall as five foot eight
 - C. as five foot eight tall as
 - D. as tall five foot eight as

6. – Did you take enough money with you?
 – No. I needed ___ I thought I would. (2006 高考全国二卷)
 - A. not so much as
 - B. as much as
 - C. much more than
 - D. much less than

7. My English teacher's humor was ___ make every student burst into laughter.
 - A. so as to
 - B. such as to
 - C. such that
 - D. so that

8. They play all kinds of instruments and sing ___.
 - A. also
 - B. either
 - C. as well
 - D. as well as

9. Tom, ___ Jane and Rose, ___ going to the farm on foot.
 - A. as long as; is
 - B. as well as; are
 - C. as long as; are
 - D. as well as; is

10. They travel at full speed by day ___.
 - A. and night
 - B. and by night as well as
 - C. as well at night
 - D. as well as by night

11. Mrs Black writes ___ , if not better than, her husband.



- A. as well as B. so well C. so well D. as well
12. It was at the gate ___ he told me the news.
A. that B. what C. which D. when
13. Is ___ necessary to complete the design before National Day?
A. this B. that C. it D. He
14. I don't think ___ possible to master a foreign language without much memory work.
A. this B. that C. its D. it
15. Does ___ matter if he can't finish the job on time?
A. this B. that C. he D. it
16. It was not ___ she took off her dark glasses ___ I realized she was a famous film star.
A. when; that B. until; that C. until; when D. when; then
17. The official made ___ clear that he would do everything possible to solve the problem.
A. it B. this C. that D. him
18. It is not so much the language ___ the cultural background that makes the film difficult to understand. (2011 年及 2015 年专四)
A. but B. nor C. like D. as
19. I can't put up with ___. (2016 年专四)
A. that friend of you B. that friend of yours
C. the friend of you D. the friend of yours
20. You must fire ___ incompetent assistant of yours. (2017 年专四)
A. the B. an C. that D. whichever

参考答案

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	C	D	A	B	A	B	C	D	D
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	A	C	D	D	B	A	D	B	C



附录五 英语语法长难句 100

语法的一大用处就是分析阅读中的长难句，此处精选了长难句 100 句，源自高考至 GRE 不同难度英语考试的阅读真题，覆盖了英语语法体系中的所有语法点。

志在通透掌握英语语法体系的读者可以从最简单的高考难度开始，检测自己能否细致分析这一难度的长难句——请注意能读懂句子并不意味着能对这些句子进行细致的语法分析。以辅助阅读为目的学习语法的读者则可以快速定位至不能一遍读懂的句子处进行分析，具体分析也可以粗略一些，达到看懂句子的程度即可。

参考分析，请在 EnglishBuddy 微信公众号回复关键词「长难句 100」获取。

1. All customers travelling on TransLink services must be in possession of a valid ticket before boarding. (2020 年高考)
2. Race walking shares many fitness benefits with running, research shows, while most likely contributing to fewer injuries. (2020 年高考)
3. These include plants that have sensors printed onto their leaves to show when they're short of water and a plant that can detect harmful chemicals in groundwater. (2020 年高考)
4. A son of immigrants, Chris started learning English a little over three years ago. (2019 年高考)
5. As data and identity theft becomes more and more common, the market is growing for biometric technologies — like fingerprint scans — to keep others out of private e-spaces. (2019 年高考)
6. Enviable as the cool kids may have seemed, Dr. Prinstein's studies show unpleasant consequences. (2019 年高考)
7. Morning or Afternoon, this bike tour is the perfect tour for D.C. newcomers and locals looking to experience Washington, D.C. in a healthy way with minimum effort. (2018 年高考)
8. In *Save Money: Good Food*, she visits a different home each week and with the help of chef Matt Tebbutt offers top tips on how to reduce food waste, while preparing recipes for under £5 per family a day. (2018 年高考)



9. Languages have been coming and going for thousands of years, but in recent times there has been less coming and a lot more going. (2018 年高考)
10. To figure out how much power these devices are using, Callie Babbitt and her colleagues at the Rochester Institute of Technology in New York tracked the environmental costs for each product throughout its life — from when its minerals are mined to when we stop using the device. (2018 年高考)
11. Our view is that if many people are living for longer, and are healthier for longer, then this will result in an inevitable redesign of work and life. (2019 年 6 月四级一卷)
12. Given the increasing concern about health care costs for the aging population, Karraker believes policymakers should be aware of the relationship between disease and risk of divorce. (2019 年 6 月四级一卷)
13. According to the first research to tackle this topic head-on, misnaming the most familiar people in our life is a common cognitive error that has to do with how our memories classify and store familiar names. (2019 年 6 月四级一卷)
14. Several times a month, you can find a doctor in the aisles of Ralph's market in Huntington Beach, California, wearing a white coat and helping people learn about food. (2018 年 12 月四级一卷)
15. California has been facing a drought for many years now, with certain areas even having to pump freshwater hundreds of miles to their distribution system. (2018 年 12 月四级一卷)
16. Should the cars be programmed to avoid hitting a child running across the road, even if that will put their passengers at risk? (2018 年 12 月四级一卷)
17. David Hunt, an associate professor in sociology at Augusta University, which has rolled out digital textbooks across its math and psychology departments, told BuzzFeed News that he understands the utility of using systems that require access codes. (2018 年 6 月四级一卷)
18. Word got out that it was missing when someone asked to see the letter for research purposes, and the intern put the letter back. (2018 年 6 月四级一卷)



19. As I was suffering through my week of anxiety, overthinking the material and guessing my grasp of it, I did some of my own polling among students and professors. (2017年12月四级一卷)
20. Curious if the left hemispheres were indeed remaining awake to process information detected in the surrounding environment, Dr. Sasaki re-ran the experiment while presenting the sleeping participants with a mix of regularly timed beeps of the same tone and irregular beeps of a different tone during the night. (2017年12月四级一卷)
21. The project, in collaboration with a number of specialized IT and agricultural partners, had one goal in mind – to take a variety of academic and physical data sources from an agricultural environment and turn these into automatic predictive solutions for farmers that would assist them in making real-time decisions in the field. (2020年12月六级一卷)
22. Marcel Proust, another lover of the Louvre, wrote: "It is only through art that we can escape from ourselves and know how another person sees the universe, whose landscapes would otherwise have remained as unknown as any on the moon." (2020年12月六级一卷)
23. Red meats are among the biggest and most notorious emitters, but trucking a salad from California to Minnesota in January also carries a significant burden. (2020年12月六级一卷)
24. Some of the insistence on English-first was founded on research produced decades ago, in which bilingual students underperformed monolingual English speakers and had lower IQ scores. (2020年9月六级一卷)
25. No one disputes the costs in quality of life and depleted health budgets of an obese population, but the quest for solutions gets diverted by ideological arguments around responsibility and choice. (2020年9月六级一卷)
26. If a proposal by the Australian government goes ahead, the region will also become the world's largest marine protected area, with restrictions or bans on fishing, mining and marine farming. (2020年9月六级一卷)



27. But an array of countries are rushing to assert greater influence here, with an eye not just towards the day those protective treaties expire, but also for the strategic and commercial opportunities that already exist. (2020 年 7 月六级)
28. MPs voted overwhelmingly in favour of Labour amendments to the children and families bill last February that included the power to regulate for plain packaging. (2020 年 7 月六级)
29. If going to university doesn't work out, students pay very little – if any – of their tuition fees back: you only start repaying when you are earning £21,000 a year. (2020 年 7 月六级)
30. This time around, Twenge and her team make a point of saying that they are not trying to establish causes as such, but that they are assessing the plausibility of potential causes. (2019 年 12 月六级一卷)
31. It has become a grimly reliable annual ritual: every January the cost of travelling by train rises, imposing a significant extra burden on those who have no option but to use the rail network to get to work or otherwise. (2021 年考研)
32. In 2007, Indonesia started phasing in a program that gives money to its poorest residents under certain conditions, such as requiring people to keep kids in school or get regular medical care. (2021 年考研)
33. Of course, I need to concede that my collection of "Smiling Victorians" makes up only a tiny percentage of the vast catalogue of photographic portraiture created between 1840 and 1900, the majority of which show sitters posing miserably and stiffly in front of painted backdrops, or staring absently into the middle distance. (2021 年考研)
34. The commission argued that other agencies would protect against anti-competitive behavior, such as a broadband-providing conglomerate like AT&T favoring its own videotostreaming service at the expense of Netflix and Apple TV. (2021 年考研)
35. Some might see the proposal as a booby prize for the fact that Britain is no longer able to apply for the much more prestigious title of European capital of culture, a sought-after award bagged by Glasgow in 1990 and Liverpool in 2008. (2020 年考研)



36. The most drastic, and thoroughly illegal, reaction has been the emergence of Sci-Hub, a kind of global photocopier for scientific papers, set up in 2012, which now claims to offer access to every paywalled article published since 2015. (2020 年考研)
37. Writing in *The New Republic*, Alice Lee notes that increasing the number of opportunities for board membership without increasing the pool of qualified women to serve on such boards has led to a "golden skirt" phenomenon, where the same elite women scoop up multiple seats on a variety of boards (2020 年考研)
38. These unilateral developments differ in their specifics, but they are all designed to tax multinationals on income and revenue that countries believe they should have a right to tax, even if international tax rules do not grant them that right. (2020 年考研)
39. In the US, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 has pushed most public companies to defer performance bonuses for senior executives by about a year, slightly helping reduce "short-termism." (2019 年考研)
40. For public institutions, state funds are sometimes tied partly to their success on metrics such as graduation rates and student retention – so better grades can, by boosting figures like those, mean more money. (2019 年考研)
41. The tree is thickly branched with dense foliage of tough, dark green oval leaves, and produces small, yellow, bell-shaped flowers and pale yellow pear-shaped fruits. (剑桥雅思 15)
42. If the vehicle can do some or all of the driving, it may be possible to be productive, to socialise or simply to relax while automation systems have responsibility for safe control of the vehicle. (剑桥雅思 15)
43. The traveller "who has for weeks or months seen himself only as a puny and irrelevant alien crawling laboriously over a country in which he has no roots and no background, suddenly encounters his other self, a relatively solid figure, with a place in the minds of certain people". (剑桥雅思 15)
44. They failed to take into account that purpose-built street cafes could not operate in the hot sun without the protective awnings common in older buildings, and would need energy-consuming air conditioning instead, or that its giant car park would feel so unwelcoming that it would put people off getting out of their cars. (剑桥雅思 15)



45. While the prospect of bringing extinct animals back to life might capture imaginations, it is, of course, far easier to try to save an existing species which is merely threatened with extinction. (剑桥雅思 15)
46. Another study, conducted by David Cheng and Lu Wang of Australian National University, was based on the hypothesis that humour might provide a respite from tedious situations in the workplace. (剑桥雅思 15)
47. Critics who had begun to think that Moore had become less revolutionary were proven wrong by the appearance, in 1950, of the first of Moore's series of standing figures in bronze, with their harsh and angular pierced forms and distinct impression of menace. (剑桥雅思 15)
48. The Desolenator operates as a mobile desalination unit that can take water from different places, such as the sea, rivers, boreholes and rain, and purify it for human consumption. (剑桥雅思 15)
49. Checking for variants of these two tales and similar stories from Africa, East Asia and other regions, he ended up with 58 stories recorded from oral traditions. (剑桥雅思 15)
50. In order to succeed, Whaley needs to get the local people on board, and that has meant overcoming local prejudices. (剑桥雅思 15)
51. However, a blindfolded snake strikes correctly at a dead rat that is pulled across the cage, provided the rat is warmer than the surroundings. (托福 TPO65)
52. It also became one of the key instruments in the reform of chemistry that we know as the chemical revolution because it was essential to incorporating a whole new state of matter, the gaseous state, into chemistry, alongside the already studied solid and liquid states. (托福 TPO65)
53. It has been estimated that the total length of the qanat system today, counting wells, shafts, and canals, is in excess of 300,000 kilometers (almost the distance from Earth to the Moon!), which gives some idea of the tremendous investment in money and labor power it represents. (托福 TPO65)



54. Later pterosaurs are more enigmatic: their arms and especially their hands seem too long to be used comfortably for walking, but their tails were too short to counterbalance their bodies if they walked just on their hindlegs. (托福 TPO64)
55. Given their ability to discriminate a difference in speech as the difference between two consonants, it is not surprising that infants can distinguish different people on the basis of voice. (托福 TPO64)
56. Since these bands were small in size and never stayed in one place for a sufficient period of time to have much long-term effect on the plant and animal populations on which they subsisted, the hunter-foragers's overall impact on their environment was low. (托福 TPO64)
57. This nascent world system developed as a result of insatiable demands for nonlocal raw materials in different ecological regions where societies were developing along very similar evolutionary tracks toward greater complexity. (托福 TPO63)
58. Although the nucleus is of the order of a few kilometers in size, the diameter of the coma may be tens or hundreds of thousands of kilometers, the tails typically extend out tens or hundreds of millions of kilometers away from the coma. (托福 TPO63)
59. Although the Romans had gods of their own, they also adopted many Greek gods and myths and assimilated Greek religious beliefs and practices into a form of state religion. (托福 TPO63)
60. The greater the mass of the cactus, the more heat it can store and the less prone it will be to freezing damage during the night. (托福 TPO62)
61. For the imitation to succeed in fooling us, it must resemble one or more works that we have been led to believe are undoctored originals. (SAT)
62. To stop the citrus beetle, healthy trees were destroyed even though there was no visible evidence of infestation, and normal environmental regulations were suspended so that a rapid response could be mounted. (SAT)
63. The modern versions of silent films may appear jerky and flickery, but the vast picture palaces did not attract four to six thousand people a night by giving them eyestrain. (SAT)



64. Though castles were made obsolete by the invention of the cannon in the fourteenth century, many survive to the present day as fascinating relics of a bygone era. (SAT)
65. Whereas ancient landlubbers would have had to reinvent their means of hunting, foraging, and housing as they passed through different terrains, ancient mariners could have had smooth sailing through relatively unchanging coastal environments. (SAT)
66. In Belgium, immigrants who lose jobs can receive almost two-thirds of their most recent wage in state benefits, which must make the hunt for a new job less urgent. (2019 年专四)
67. If she had possessed a leash, her mother would have been fastened to it as a means of tugging her along to keep step with the rush of other shoppers. (2019 年专四)
68. Researchers at the New School for Social Research, in New York City, found that when they had volunteers read works of acclaimed "literary fiction", it seemed to temporarily improve their ability to interpret other people's emotions. (2019 年专四)
69. Because of its abundant natural resources, the United States appeared to be a "land of plenty" where millions could come to seek their fortunes. (2018 年专四)
70. The Oscars are probably the most famous, a time for the (mostly) American film industry to tell itself how good it is» an annual opportunity for big stars to give each other awards and make tearful speeches. (2018 年专四)
71. She was beginning to recognize this thing that was approaching to possess her, and she was striving to beat it back with her will – as powerless as her two white slender hands would have been. (2018 年专四)
72. As I got older, and started working, rainy days came to be just another nuisance and my childhood dreams of finding treasure faded. (2017 年专四)
73. It had a high collar with a tiny ruff, making her, she thought, look wonderfully a woman, and dignified.
(2017 年专四)



74. My mother was amazed because the woman who lived next door always wrote a list of what she needed before she went to the supermarket. (2017 年专四)
75. My mouth watered for it, my stomach craved it, my whole being begged for it. (2016 年专四)
76. Under the changes of weather it may look like marble or like sea water, black as slate in the fog, white as tufa in sunlight. (2019 年专八)
77. If real newspapers were to emerge from the public's demand for more and better coverage, it would have to come from a youthful generation of editors for whom journalism was a totally absorbing profession, an exacting vocational ideal rather than a mere offshoot of job printing. (2019 年专八)
78. The first sign of a man caught up in the Robin Hood syndrome was when he started out, forced into outlawry as a victim of injustice; and when he then set out to "right wrongs", first his own and then other people's. (2019 年专八)
79. "We Australians," it stated in a recent issue, "are just too fond of painting the rosy picture of the big, warm-hearted Aussie." (2018 年专八)
80. For example, when tested in a foreign language, people are less likely to fall into a cognitive trap (answering a test question with an obvious-seeming but wrong answer) than when tested in their native language. (2018 年专八)
81. That he had anything to do with the concern she could not tell, but because he happened to be looking in her direction, her weakening heart misgave her and she hurried by, too overcome with shame to enter in. (2018 年专八)
82. Stepping out of the house in the morning to greet our neighbours – wild horses on one side, donkeys on the other – with nothing but birdsong filling the air, I felt a sense of adventure you normally only get with wild camping. (2017 年专八)
83. In teaching terms, we often forget that reading itself can be a creative process, just as writing is, and we too often relegate it to a means of data collection. (2017 年专八)
84. Families who are rent apart by welfare dependency, job discrimination and intense feelings of alienation have produced minority teenagers with very little self-discipline



and little faith that good grades and the American work ethic will pay off. (2017 年专八)

85. A chauffeur in a uniform crossed my lawn early that Saturday morning with a surprisingly formal note from his employer – the honor would be entirely Gatsby's, it said, if I would attend his "little party" that night. (2016 年专八)
86. First, minority firms risk expanding too fast and overextending themselves financially, since most are small concerns and, unlike large businesses, they often need to make substantial investments in new plants, staff, equipment, and the like in order to perform work subcontracted to them. (GMAT)
87. There is no honor but in the Wonderland race we must all run, all trying to win, none winning in the end (for there is no end). (GMAT)
88. Efforts to explain how the pterosaurs became airborne have led to suggestions that they launched themselves by jumping from cliffs, by dropping from trees, or even by rising into light winds from the crests of waves. (GMAT)
89. Although shortfalls in overlords' income resulted almost as much from laxity among their tax collectors (the nearly inevitable outcome of hereditary office-holding) as from their higher standards of living, a misfortune like a fire or flood, bringing an increase in expenses or a drop in revenue, could put a domain in debt to the city rice-brokers who handled its finances. (GMAT)
90. By the early eleventh century, however, the empire had regained almost half of its lost possessions, its new frontiers were secure, and its influence extended far beyond its borders. (GMAT)
91. Black people were most influenced by those Euro-American tales whose functional meaning and aesthetic appeal had the greatest similarity to the tales with deep roots in their ancestral homeland.
(GRE)
92. In all attempts to retrieve energy from HDR's, artificial stimulation will be required to create either sufficient permeability or bounded flow paths to facilitate the removal of heat by circulation of a fluid over the surface of the rock. (GRE)



93. Many readers are convinced that the compelling mysteries of each plot conceal elaborate structures of allusion and fierce, though shadowy, moral ambitions that seem to indicate metaphysical intentions, though efforts by critics to articulate these intentions have generated much controversy. (GRE)
94. Plasmids are also one of the two kinds of vehicles (the other being viruses) that molecular biologists depend on when performing gene transplant experiments. (GRE)
95. At the turn of the century, by contrast, most Black poets generally wrote in the conventional manner of the age and expressed noble, if vague, emotions in their poetry. (GRE)
96. These acids are a metabolic product of certain gram-positive members of the cutaneous community, which break down the more complex lipids in freshly secreted sebum. (GRE)
97. By the time the American colonists took up arms against Great Britain in order to secure their independence, the institution of Black slavery was deeply entrenched. (GRE)
98. His thesis works relatively well when applied to discrimination against Blacks in the United States, but his definition of racial prejudice as "racially-based negative prejudices against a group generally accepted as a race in any given region of ethnic competition," can be interpreted as also including hostility toward such ethnic groups as the Chinese in California and the Jews in medieval Europe. (GRE)
99. Nevertheless, even now, after lengthy consideration of the theory's refined but legitimate observations, one cannot avoid the conclusion that the eight romances are only one work. (GRE)
100. The refrigerant leaves the compressor as a hot, dense vapor and flows through a heat exchanger called the condenser, which transfers heat from the refrigerant to a body of air. (GRE)

